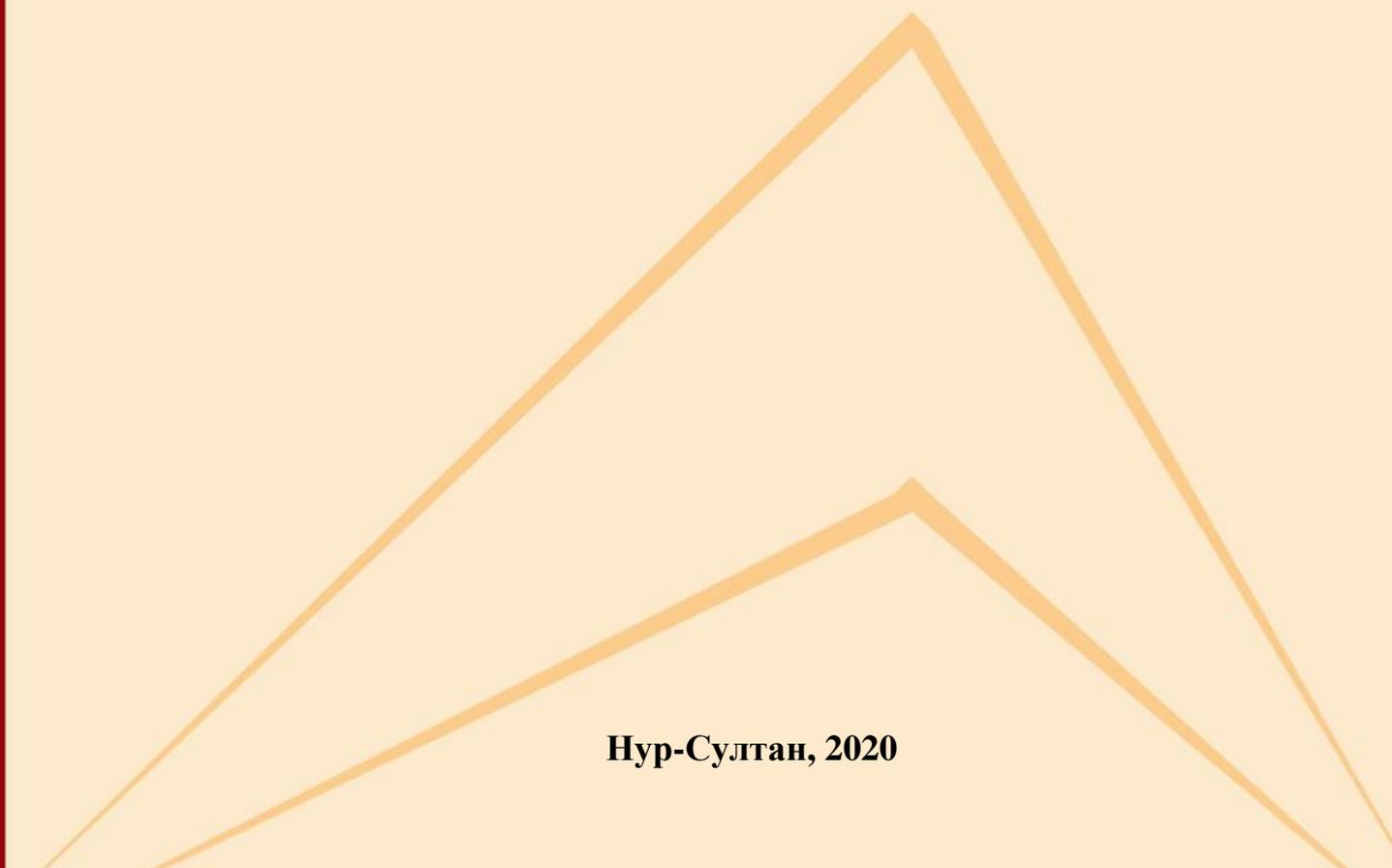

**А.Е. Аяпбекова, Г.М. Сейсенбаева,
Д.И. Жангельдина, Е. Болат**

**АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК
ДЛЯ СПЕЦИАЛЬНОСТИ «ТУРИЗМ»**

Учебное пособие

Нур-Султан, 2020



Авторы:

Аялбекова А.Е., Кандидат географических наук, доцент, университет Туран-Астана, г. Нур-Султан

Сейсенбаева Е.М., магистр, старший преподаватель кафедры «Иностранных языков» университет иностранных языков и деловой карьеры, г. Алматы

Джангельдина Д.И., кандидат педагогических наук, ассоциированный профессор, кафедра «Менеджмент и туризм» Казахский университет технологии и бизнеса, г. Нур-Султан

Болат Е., магистр, НИШ («Назарбаев Интеллектуальные школы»)

Английский язык для специальности «Туризм»: учебное пособие. – Нур-Султан: «Туран-Астана», 2020. – 195 с.

CONTENTS

Foreword	5
Tourism	6
The changing face of tourism: ecotourism	8
People in tourism	10
Tourist companies	11
Types of tourism	13
Hospitality as one of the major aspects of the work of the tourist companies and travel agencies	15
People in hospitality	16
Hotel departments	18
Types of restaurants	20
History of transportation as the history of the development of tourism	22
Methods of payment	23
Travelling by car	25
Travelling by sea	26
Travelling by plane	28
Regulation, research and development in tourism	31
Tour operators	33
Social service and tourism	36
Ecological problems	37
Tourism in Kazakhstan	38
Historical and cultural tourism	41
1.Dialogue. Business trip (Командировка)	43
2.Dialogue. Unsuccessful trip (Неудачное путешествие)	45
3.Dialogue. Travelling (Путешествие)	48
4.Dialogue. Meeting a friend (Встреча с другом)	50
5.Dialogue. Nice to meet you! (Приятно познакомиться!)	53
6.Dialogue. Where are you from? (Откуда вы?)	54
7.Dialogue. Making plans (Составление планов)	55
8.Dialogue. Making a dinner reservation (Заказ ужина)	56
9.Dialogue. Paying and complaining (Оплата и жалобы на обслуживание)	58
10.Dialogue. Travelling information (Справка на вокзале)	59
11.Dialogue. Check-in at the airport (Регистрация в аэропорту)	59
12.Dialogue. Asking for directions (Как пройти)	60
13.Dialogue. Reserving a hotel room (Бронирование комнаты в гостинице)	61
14.Dialogue. In a supermarket (В супермаркете)	62
15.Dialogue. Exchanging money (Обмен денег)	63
16.Dialogue. Withdrawing and transferring money (Снятие и перевод денег)	65

17.Dialogue. Posting letters and parcels (Отправление писем и посылок)	66
18.Dialogue. At an exhibition (На выставке)	67
19.Dialogue. Sightseeing around london (Экскурсия по лондону и его окрестностям)	68
20.Dialogue. At the beach (На пляже)	69
21.Dialogue. At the pharmacy (В аптеке)	70
22.Dialogue. At the constabulary's office (В полицейском участке)	71
23.Dialogue. In the emergency room (В кабинете скорой помощи)	72
24.Dialogue. Seeing a doctor (Визит к врачу)	72
Article	74
Auxiliary verbs	78
Pronoun	84
The degrees of comparison of adjectives and adverbs	91
Prepositions	96
Word order	100
Simple tenses (Present simple, past simple, future simple)	105
Types of questions (General questions, alternative questions, special questions, disjunctive questions)	110
Continuous tenses (Present continuous, past continuous, future continuous)	115
Perfect tenses (Present perfect, past perfect, future perfect)	120
Perfect continuous tenses (Present perfect continuous, past perfect continuous, future perfect continuous)	125
Modal verbs	131
Gerund	136
Phrasal verbs	141
Conditional sentences type I, II, III	144
Passive voice	149
Sequence of tenses	153
Key to exercises	158

Предисловие

Учебное пособие предназначено для студентов специальности «Туризм» и включает следующие разделы: тексты для развития письменной речи и навыков чтения, диалоги на английском языке с переводом для развития навыков речи, правила и упражнения по грамматике английского языка. Может быть использовано на занятиях в университете, а также для самостоятельной работы студентов специальности «Туризм».

Весь представленный в данном пособии материал по своему содержанию полностью перекликается с содержанием курсов специальных дисциплин по представленной специальности.

Данное пособие ставит перед собой основную цель: познакомить обучающихся с основными видами профессиональной деятельности в туризме и гостеприимстве, видами туристских компаний, гостиниц и ресторанов, видами и формами обслуживания, видами туризма, платежными средствами туризма, широко распространенными в мире сегодня; расширить словарный запас обучающихся за счет овладения ими современной терминологией, широко используемой в сферах туризма, гостеприимства и финансов.

1. TOURISM

Twenty years ago not many people travelled overseas for their holidays. The majority of people stayed to have holidays in their country. Today the situation is different and the world seems much smaller.

It is possible to book a holiday to a seaside resort on the other side of the world. Staying at home, you can book it through the Internet or by phone. The plane takes you straight there and within some hours of leaving your country, you can be on a tropical beach, breathing a super clean air and swimming in crystal warm water of tropical sea.

We can travel by car, by train or plane, if we have got a long distance tour. Some young people prefer walking or hitch-hike travelling, when you travel, paying nearly nothing. You get new friends, lots of fun and have no idea where you will be tomorrow. It has great advantages for the tourists, who want to get the most out of exploring the world and give more back to the people and places visited. If you like mountains, you could climb any mountains around the globe and there is only one restriction. It is money. If you like travelling, you have got to have some money, because it is not a cheap hobby indeed. The economy of some countries is mainly based on tourism industry. Modern tourism has become a highly developed industry, because any human being is curious and inquisitive, we like leisure, visit other places. That is why tourism prospers.

People travel from the very beginning of their civilization. Thousands years ago all people were nomads and collectors. They roamed all their lives looking for food and better life. This way human beings populated the whole planet Earth. So, travelling and visiting other places are the part of our consciousness. That is why tourism and travelling are so popular.

Nowadays tourism has become a highly developed business. There are trains, cars and air jet liners, buses, ships that provide us with comfortable and secure travelling.

If we travel for pleasure, by all means one would like to enjoy picturesque places they are passing through, one would like seeing the places of interest, enjoying the sightseeing of the cities, towns and countries.

Nowadays people travel not only for pleasure but also on business. People have to go to other countries for taking part in different negotiations, for signing some very important documents, for participating in different exhibitions, in order to exhibit the goods of own firm or company. Travelling on business helps people to get more information about achievements of other companies, which will help making own business more successful.

There are a lot of means of travelling: travelling by ship, by plane, by car, walking. It depends on a person to decide which means of travelling one would prefer.

Questions:

1. Did the majority of people leave their country to spend holidays twenty years ago?

2. Can we book a holiday to a seaside resort on the other side of the world today?
3. Is it possible to book a holiday to a seaside resort on the other side of the world from home?
4. What means of travelling do you know?
5. What countries depend mainly on tourism?
6. Why does tourism prosper?
7. Where do people like going on vacation?
8. What is the most interesting means of travelling for you? Why?
9. Why do most travellers carry a camera with them?
10. What does travelling give us?
11. How does travelling on business help you?
12. What are the means of travelling?

Vocabulary:

overseas – заграница
 majority – большинство
 to seem – казаться
 to book – заказывать
 resorts – курорт
 straight – прямо
 a tropical beach – тропический пляж
 to breathe – дышать
 to hitchhike – путешествовать автостопом
 advantage – преимущество
 to explore – исследовать
 to climb – взбираться, карабкаться
 restriction – ограничение
 indeed – действительно
 curious – любопытный
 inquisitive – любознательный
 leisure – досуг
 jet-air liner – реактивный самолет
 security – безопасность
 variety – разнообразие
 city-dweller – городской житель
 to take pictures – фотографировать
 castle – крепость, замок
 waterfall – водопад
 to remind – напоминать
 picturesque – живописный
 to broaden one's mind – расширить кругозор
 take part in negotiations – принимать участие в переговорах
 exhibition – выставка
 in order to – для того чтобы

to push the goods – рекламировать товары
achievement – достижение
successful – успешный
advantages and disadvantages – преимущества и недостатки
according to – согласно

2. THE CHANGING FACE OF TOURISM: ECOTOURISM

Overpopulation, industrialization, urbanization and environmental pollution have disastrous effects on Nature and wildlife. Nowadays we often hear such words as nature tourism, green tourism, sustainable tourism, bio-tourism, ecologically responsible tourism, educational tourism and cultural tourism. But sometimes we don't fully understand their meaning. All these terms have much in common but they are not synonyms with ecotourism which probably involves a little of all of them.

Ecotourism is one of the fastest-growing sectors of the tourism industry. The International Ecotourism Society defines ecotourism as 'responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment and improves the well-being of local people.' Ecotourism has a save-the-planet goal. Unfortunately there are very few pristine and unpolluted areas left in the world and they must be protected. Ecotourism is a travelling to natural destinations with rare flora and fauna.

Environmental organizations say that ecotourism is 'nature-based, sustainably managed, conservation supporting, and environmentally educated'. It gives the tourist the opportunity to broaden his mind, to discover new ways of life, to meet interesting people, to improve his or her knowledge in history and geography. Ecotourism provides funds for conservation and benefits the economic development of local communities as tourists provide jobs to local people, use local transportation, inns and markets and make voluntary contributions. Besides, ecotourism helps people understand the environment around them, makes them respect different cultures and be careful with Nature. It is an unforgettable experience which is rewarding at the same time.

Ecotourism is for environment-conscious people who love Nature, understand the negative influence of conventional tourism on the environment and want to minimize it. Ecotourism promotes recycling, energy efficiency, water conservation, safe disposal of waste and garbage and creation of economic opportunities for the local communities.

However ecotourism may have some negative aspects. The increasing number of tourists may damage the local environment. Some tourists don't understand the negative consequences of their visits. Many of them don't know how to behave and don't follow the main rule of ecotourism 'Leave nothing behind you except footprints and take nothing away except photographs'. They pollute drinking water, pick up rare flowers, disturb wild animals, purchase souvenirs made from the skin of endangered animals or leaves of rare plants. Searching for 'untouched places' tourists move off the beaten path and scare away animals.

First and foremost ecotourism is education. That is why before visiting some remote area tourists should learn as much as they can about its flora, fauna, local people, history, culture and traditions. It is also useful to learn a few words of the local language. The more information you learn, the more you will get out of your trip. It is very important to be open-minded and respectful.

Don't forget about conservation and careful attitude to the environment in your everyday life. Follow the rule, 'Preserve and improve'. And remember that Nature is very fragile and we ought to take great care of it like a loving mother who takes great care of her only child.

Questions:

1. Why do overpopulation, industrialization, urbanization and environmental pollution have disastrous effects on Nature and wildlife?
2. Why is ecotourism popular nowadays?
3. What are the main goals of ecotourism?
4. What opportunities does ecotourism give to the tourist?
5. How does ecotourism benefit the economic development of local communities?
6. What are the negative aspects of ecotourism?
7. Can we say that ecotourism has the power to educate? Why?
8. Why is it important not to forget about conservation and careful attitude to the environment in our everyday life?

Vocabulary:

industrialization - индустриализация

urbanization - урбанизация

environmental pollution - загрязнение окружающей среды

flora - флора

fauna - фауна

recycling - утилизация отходов

conservation - сохранение

ecotourism – экотуризм

the fastest-growing sectors – самые быстрорастущие отрасли

the international ecotourism society – международное общество экотуризма

defines – определяет

local people – местные люди

unfortunately – к несчастью

destination – пункт назначения

flora and fauna - флора и фауна

conservation - сохранение

careful attitude - осторожное отношение

fragile - хрупкий

great care of - большая забота о

forget – забыть

3. PEOPLE IN TOURISM

The tour operator works in the tourist company. He develops tours also known as tour packages. Tour packages include transportation, accommodation, catering, transfers and other services. The tour operator usually markets the tours. He advertises them in mass media or in brochures. The tour operator is a wholesaler. He sells tour packages to travel agents wholesale and pays commission to them. Sometimes he sells tour packages direct to the public.

The travel agent works in a travel company. The travel agent like the shop-assistant sells goods to customers. The goods which he offers are the tour operator's packages. The travel agent is a retailer. He sells tour packages retail to consumers. He gets a commission from the tour operator. The commission is from 5 to 10 per cent of the tour cost. The travel agent works directly with the public.

The tourism manager works in a tourist company. He runs some tourist business. He supervises all kinds of operations in a tourist company. He also supervises the tourist company staff. The tourism manager plans tourist business: operations, new products, profits. He controls the results. He also decides on prices and discounts.

The tour guide handles tour groups. He shows tourists round a city, a sight, or a museum. The tour guide conducts sightseeing tours or tours of museums and exhibitions. The tour guide is also called the tour conductor. He is a friendly, easy-going, and helpful person. Tourists always tip their guides if they like them.

The animator organizes and provides entertainments for guests in a hotel or a holiday resort. He also organizes entertainment programmes for passengers on a cruise ship. The animator speaks a few foreign languages. He is very artistic. He usually dances well, sings well and acts like an actor. He is a cheerful person. The animator is the main entertainer in the tourist industry.

Questions:

1. Where does the tour operator work?
2. What do tour packages include?
3. What does the travel agent do?
4. What does "a retailer" mean?
5. How high is the travel agent's commission?
6. What does the tourism manager plan and control?
7. What kind of person is the tour guide?
8. Why does the animator speak a few foreign languages?

Vocabulary:

tour package - тур пакет

transportation - транспорт

transfer - перечислить

wholesaler - оптовик

customer - клиент

consumer - потребитель

goods - груз
retailer - розничный торговец
run - запустить
supervise - надзирать
profit - прибыль
discount - скидка
exhibition - выставка
entertainment - развлекательная программа
foreign language - иностранный язык
easy-going, helpful and cheerful person - спокойный, отзывчивый и веселый человек
supplier - поставщик
travel insurance - страхование путешествий
tip - подсказка
handle - ручка
car rental (hire) - прокат автомобилей (аренда)
sightseeing - экскурсионный

4. TOURIST COMPANIES

Tour operators are tourist companies which develop and put together tour packages. Tour operators do market research. They promote their tours and advertise them. Tour operators publish colourful brochures, booklets, and travelogues. There are independent tour operators. But among tour operators there are major airlines and shipping companies.

Travel agencies are retail tourist companies which work directly with the public. Travel agencies are often called travel shops where customers buy different tourist products. Travel agencies sell tour operators' tour packages and individual tourist services. Among tour packages there are inclusive tours, charter inclusive tours and inclusive tours with an excursion. Travel agencies also sell coaching tours and cruising tours.

Tourist information offices are also called tourist information centres. There are tourist information offices at major airports, railway stations, hotels, holiday or leisure centres and many tourist attractions. Tourist information offices have got office clerks who give advice to customers on car hire, sightseeing and other coach tours, accommodations, flights and so on. The clerks also give city orientations to guests. Tourist information office clerks answer a lot of phone calls and give information on passports and visas, the Customs and luggage, weather and climate, city public transport and food service.

Many large travel companies have got a lot of outlets within a city, a region, a country or throughout the world. An outlet is a point of sales of a company. There are outlets of travel agencies, airlines, car hire companies, coaching and cruising companies. There is usually just one travel clerk at a sales outlet. He or she does all the work.

There are people in tourism who work for themselves. They are called free-lancers. They don't work full-time for any tourist company. They work part-time or in high season only. They don't work in low and off-season. Among free-lancers there are guides, guides-interpreters, escorts, animators, travel writers. Tourist companies employ them for seasonal work. Free-lancers are registered. It means that, on the one hand, they have got licences. Licences prove their qualifications and give them permission to work. On the other hand, if they are registered, they pay taxes. Free-lancers are, as a rule, members of professional associations. In high season free-lancers earn a lot of money. In low and off-season they don't earn any money at all or do some other job. Teachers work as free-lance guides, students work as escorts, actors work as animators.

Questions:

1. How do tour operators promote their tours?
2. What kind of companies are travel agencies?
3. Why are travel agencies called travel shops?
4. What kind of tours do travel agencies offer?
5. Where are tourist information offices located?
6. What is an outlet?
7. How and when do free-lancers work?
8. What does it mean that free-lancers are registered?

Vocabulary:

competitor - конкурент

free of charge - бесплатно

guide book - путеводитель

holiday centre - база отдыха

full-time inclusive tour - эксклюзивный тур на полный рабочий день

high season in-coming tourism - высокий сезон въездной туризм

centre - центр

luggage - багаж

market research - маркетинговое исследование

part-time - неполный

to promote tax - для продвижения налога

reasonable terminal - разумный терминал

sales outlet timetable - расписание продаж

tourist information centre - туристический информационный центр

advantage - преимущество

out-going tourism - выездной туризм

billboard - рекламный щит

branch - филиал

charter - чартер

coach - тренер

the customs - таможня

department store - универсам
to employ - трудоустроить
escort - эскорт
folder - скоросшиватель

5. TYPES OF TOURISM

Leisure tourism is also called pleasure tourism or holiday tourism. It is a type of tourism when a person goes on holiday and does not travel on business. Thus, the purpose of tourism in this case is recreation. Leisure travelers look for sun, sea and sand. They want to go sunbathing, swimming and diving. So this kind of travelers go to sea resorts or holiday camps and stay at resort hotels. Leisure travelers enjoy organized entertainment and sport. Holiday-makers normally travel with their families and children. More and more working people will have longer paid holidays and long weekends in future. More and more people will retire at an earlier age. It means that more and more people will travel for leisure in future.

Sports tourism is a type of active holiday. The purpose of a sporting tour is to exercise and to keep physically fit. At the same time travelers enjoy natural surroundings, fresh air and clean water. Travellers combine action and relaxation during a sporting holiday. Tourist companies offer hiking, cycling, boating, rafting and other kinds of sporting tours. Very often sporting tours require preparation and special training. First the tour instructors will plan the itinerary. Then they will train tourists how to use the sporting equipment. They will explain all the details of the route. Within sports tourism there is water tourism, mountain tourism, mountaineering, downhill skiing, horse riding and many more types. Sports tourism is popular with travelers all year round.

Business tourism is a travel for business purposes. Business travelers are businessmen and government officials. They travel on different missions. They often travel to attend a convention. Convention tourism is a part of business tourism. It involves taking part in a conference or a seminar. Business travelers often travel to attend an international exhibition or a trade fair. There are tourist companies that provide business services. Those are fax, telex and telephone communications, secretarial services, answering service, business meeting arrangements. Business travel will develop faster than other types of tourism in future.

Familiarization tourism is often called just FAM tourism. It means that a business company sends its staff on educational tours to its branches or other business companies in other cities and countries. If a travel company sends its travel clerks on FAM tours, it means that they will have educational visits to a tourist destination. There they will get familiar with local facilities, hotels, restaurants, and attractions. Normally a tour operator arranges FAM trips for the travel clerks from the travel agencies, selling its tourist products. The main purpose of travel clerks on a FAM tour is to get necessary knowledge from personal experience. When the travel clerks return home, they will know what to offer and what to

explain to their customers about the destination. FAM tourism is very popular and will become even more popular in future.

Incentive tourism means that a business company offers holiday tours to its employees and covers all travel expenses. On the one hand, the company does it as a reward or a bonus to a person for his successful work. On the other hand, the company does it as an incentive for the future. The company hopes that the employee will work even better in future and bring profit to the company. This type of tourism is still a very small part of international tourism. Most probably this type of tourism won't grow in future.

Questions:

1. How many types of tourism do you know?
2. What type of travel is leisure tourism?
3. Why will more and more people travel for pleasure in future?
4. What is the purpose of a sporting tour?
5. What kind of tourists are business travelers?
6. Why does a business company offer incentive tours to its employees?
7. What does familiarization tourism mean?

Vocabulary:

adventure tourism - приключенческий туризм

business tourism - деловой туризм

cookery - кулинария

cruise tourism - круизный туризм

cultural tourism - культурный туризм

holiday tourism - праздничный туризм

horse riding - катание на лошади

benefit - выгода

downhill skiing - катание на горных лыжах

facilities - оборудование

tourism - туризм

leisure tourism - отдых туризм

mountaineering - альпинизм

negotiations - переговоры

trade fair - ярмарка

6. HOSPITALITY AS ONE OF THE MAJOR ASPECTS OF THE WORK OF THE TOURIST COMPANIES AND TRAVEL AGENCIES

Hospitality is an important part of the tourist industry. Tourism and hospitality are very closely connected as travelers always need a place for accommodation and catering. The accommodation sector is central to tourism. The flows of tourism are directly influenced by the size of the accommodation sector, by the quality it

offers, and by its possibility to adapt to demand. Accommodation depends on the following factors:

Seasonality – as its economic activities are seasonal and accommodation implies a great flexibility in structures.

Manpower planning – as this industry is labour-intensive. It requires accurate forward planning of temporary employment.

Perishability – as its product cannot be stocked. Accommodation products that are not consumed cannot be stored for use at a future date. Non-utilization in hospitality is rather expensive.

The success of tourism depends on the quality of the hospitality and customer service and the efficiency of the operation provided by the staff of the hotel.

The hospitality product consists of the following constitutive parts and services provided by them:

Built accommodation or alternative accommodation presented by hotels, holiday centres or campsites, caravans and cruise ships;

Individual or collective accommodation presented by second homes or holiday villages;

Profit and non-profit making accommodation presented by hotels or holiday camps for children and social tourism.

The hotel is the traditional form of tourist accommodation. It creates direct and indirect employment and provides an important source of foreign currency.

Questions:

1. Is hospitality an important part of the tourist industry?
2. Why are tourism and hospitality closely connected?
3. What are the major factors which accommodation depends on?
4. What is rather expensive in hospitality?
5. What is non-profit making accommodation?
6. Why is hospitality so important?

Vocabulary:

the flows of tourism - потоки туризма

manpower planning - планирование трудовых ресурсов

perishability - тленность

profit - прибыль

non-profit - некоммерческий

foreign currency - иностранная валюта

the guided tour - экскурсия

to pay beforehand - платить заранее

non-utilization - неиспользование

the hospitality product - продукт гостеприимства

constitutive parts - составные части

services - сервисы

provided - при условии

accommodation - проживание
alternative accommodation - альтернативное жилье
holiday centres - центры отдыха
profit - прибыль
traditional form - традиционная форма
tourist accommodation - размещение для туристов
indirect employment - косвенная занятость
an important source - важный источник
foreign currency - иностранная валюта

7. PEOPLE IN HOSPITALITY

The receptionist works in the front office of a hotel. The receptionist is in charge of the check-in. She meets and greets guests, registers guests and assigns rooms to them. The receptionist must ensure that the check-in procedure is brief and convenient. The receptionist must help guests do the hotel formalities. The receptionist must send the signed registration card to the cashier's office. The receptionist answers to phone. She answers questions of visitors who have come to see the hotel guests.

The concierge works at a hotel's information desk. The concierge must speak a few languages because she has to help guests from other countries. The concierge must help guests in all ways. She can give orientations in the city, arrange taxis and sightseeing tours. She can offer entertainment. She can make theatre bookings.

The hotel manager is the head of a hotel. He may have the name of the general manager or the managing director. In a small hotel the manager may be the owner of the hotel. There may be different management positions in a hotel: the assistant manager, the resident manager, the night manager. The assistant manager helps the manager and manages the hotel when the manager is not present. The resident manager is the manager who permanently lives in the hotel. The night manager is on duty during the night.

The chef works in a restaurant or in the food and beverage department of a hotel. A restaurant may have different chefs. At the head of them is the head chef. The head chef is the kitchen supervisor. He manages the kitchen of a restaurant. He has to select menus and to plan the meals. He has to taste the dishes. In a big restaurant there may be different specialist chefs: the soup chef, the sauce chef, the vegetable chef, the pastry chef and others. The reputation of the chef may increase its business.

As a rule, the restaurant manager runs a restaurant but he doesn't own it. Sometimes the restaurant manager may own and run his small restaurant. The restaurant manager is in charge of the restaurant policy and operations. He has to decide on the image of his restaurant. He has to plan its business. He has to decide on purchases and sales. He hires the restaurant staff and provides their training. He must see that the guests are happy with the service and have no complaints.

Questions:

1. Which is the most important profession in the hotel business?
2. What are the duties of the receptionist?
3. What must a concierge do?
4. Who is the hotel manager for the guests?
5. Which are the major management positions in hospitality?
6. What do these managers do?

Vocabulary:

air-conditioning - кондиционирование воздуха

appliances - техника

bellboy - коридорный

to check in - зарегистрироваться

doorman - швейцар

entrance - вход

information desk - информационная стойка

reception desk - ресепшн

tea and coffee- чай и кофе

toiletries - туалетные принадлежности

check-in procedure - процедура регистрации

to register - зарегистрироваться

supervisor - руководитель

concierge - консьерж

specialist chef - шеф повар

to sign - подписывать

staff - сотрудники

duty - обязанность

a rule - правило

the restaurant - ресторан

a restaurant - ресторан

to plan - планировать

policy - политика

hires - наймы

purchases - покупки

sales - продажи

the service - сервис

the guests - гости

complaints - жалобы

in charge of the restaurant - отвечающий за ресторан

business - бизнес

8. HOTEL DEPARTMENTS

When hotel guests arrive, they expect the front office clerks to offer them a nice welcome. They will want someone to help them in checking-in. The front office is in the lobby of a hotel. It consists of the reservation department and the reception desk or the front desk. The reservation department provides booking of the hotel rooms. The front desk provides sales of rooms, guest registration, key service, message and mail service, guest accounts. The receptionist or the room clerk will help the guest to check in. When the receptionist watches the guest arrive, he meets and greets him. The receptionist asks the guest to fill in a registration form and assigns a room to him. A hotel guest always wants someone to take care of his room key. The front desk will do it. There is often a key drop at the desk.

When hotel guests check in, they expect someone to show them to their rooms. They also want someone to help them with their luggage. Often guests would like some employee to run errands for them. These are duties of the bell service. At the head of the bell service is the bell captain. The bell captain's post is next to the front desk. The bell captain directs bellmen. The bellman escorts the guest to his room. He must show where the light switches are. He must also explain how to use the room appliances: the TV-set, telephone, air-conditioning. In many hotels the bellman also carries the guest's luggage. But some hotels have got porters who must carry the luggage. The bellman also run errands for the guests. They can even page guests in the hotel. You can see a bellman carry a sign with the name of the guest whom he is paging. Or you can hear a bellman call out the name while he is carrying the sign.

When guests stay at the hotel they expect somebody to clean their rooms. The housekeeping department does it. At the head of the housekeeping service is the housekeeper. He supervises the chambermaids. Chambermaids prepare the rooms before the guests check in. Generally the maids air the rooms, make the beds, dust the furniture, vacuum clean the floor, wash the bathroom, empty the waste baskets. Chambermaids use master keys to provide security for the hotel rooms. If the guests need extra bedding or rollaway, the housekeeping service will do it. The housekeeping service provides hair-dryers and irons if the guests need them. He also informs which rooms are occupied and which rooms are vacant.

When guests stay at the hotel, they often use phones. There is usually the regular pay phone and the house phone. The house phone is the system of phones throughout the hotel. There is usually an operator who operates the switchboard. With the switchboard the operator can control all in-coming and out-going calls. If the guest wants someone to wake him up, to page him, to provide room service for him, or to send a telegram, he will call the operator. The operator can connect the guest with any hotel service: the front office, the housekeeping, the bell service, the room service, or the concierge. The operator has to handle outside calls too. They may be local, long-distance and international.

When guests stay at the hotel, they expect someone to protect them. The hotel security department must protect the guests from all dangers; robbery and burglary,

fire or flood. At the head of the hotel security department is the security officer. The guests may keep their valuables in a safe-deposit box. The security department is in charge of it. Often the guests lose their stuff in the hotel. The security department is in charge of the lost and found office. The security department provides fire drills for all hotel employees. Each hotel employee knows all emergency exits.

Questions:

1. Where is the front office?
2. How does the receptionist help the guest to check in?
3. What sort of rooms do most hotels offer?
4. What are the duties of the bell service?
5. How does the bellman page a guest?
6. How do maids provide security for hotel rooms?
7. What does the housekeeper do when guests check out?
8. When will the guest call the operator?
9. What kind of phones are there in a hotel?
10. How can the hotel security department protect the guests' valuables?

Vocabulary:

accountant - бухгалтер

advertisement - реклама

bellman - глашатай

service - сервис

chambermaid - горничная

counter - счетчик

check out - проверить, выписываться

crime - преступление

danger - опасность

double room - двойная комната

single room - одноместный номер

dry-cleaning - химчистка

emergency - чрезвычайное происшествие

extra bed - дополнительная кровать

front desk - стойка регистрации

housekeeping service - уборка

in-coming call - входящий звонок

long-distance call - междугородний телефонный звонок

lost and found office - потерянный и найденный офис

master key - мастер ключ

message box - окно сообщения

out-going call - исходящий вызов

reservation department - отдел бронирования

security department - отдел безопасности

rollaway - складывающаяся
room service - обслуживание номеров
safe-deposit box - сейф
suite - свита
twin-bedded room - двухместный номер
wake-up call - звонок для пробуждения

9. TYPES OF RESTAURANTS

There are eight different types of places where people can eat and drink. They are very luxurious restaurants, formal luxury restaurants, informal restaurants serving national dishes, coffee-shops, snack-bars, fast-food restaurants, bars and night clubs.

At the very luxurious restaurants dinner is a la carte. Such restaurants are usually famous for their haute cuisine. They have a sophisticated atmosphere. Their service is impeccable.

At the formal luxury restaurants the surroundings are elegant and the cuisine is superb. They are appropriate for business lunches and romantic dinners.

The informal national restaurants serve typical local dishes. They offer a lot of home-made dishes. They make bread and pasta themselves. These restaurants have two sorts of dinner menu: a la carte and a three-course fixed price menu. The atmosphere is cosy and relaxed and the meals are reasonably priced there.

At the coffee-shops the surroundings are modest and the atmosphere is friendly. The customers can have quick snacks with drinks there. These places serve sandwiches, salads, cakes, and beverages. They may offer table service, counter service or self-service.

The snack-bars have a very relaxed atmosphere and very modest surroundings. They offer self-catering as a rule. The customers can have some snack with their drink.

The fast-food restaurants offer a very quick counter service. The choice of food and drinks is fixed but limited. Such places provide a drive-in and take-off service. The bars offer different kinds of drinks, mixed drinks, beer, juices, soda. They can also serve nuts and crisp biscuits to go with the drinks.

At the night clubs the customers can have excellent wine and delicious dishes and dance to a band. Such places have a floor show. The customers can gamble if they like. They are very expensive but provide overnight catering and entertainment until 4 a. m. as a rule.

Questions:

1. What are the eight different types of places where people can eat and drink?
2. What kind of places are the very luxurious and the formal luxury restaurants?
3. What kind of places are the informal national restaurants?
4. What kind of places are the coffee-shops and the snack-bars?
5. What kind of places are the fast-food restaurants?

6. What kind of places are the bars?
7. What kind of places are the night clubs?

Vocabulary:

bacon and eggs - яичница с беконом
banqueting facilities - банкетные залы
busboy - помощник официанта
a la carte menu - меню а ля карт
catering manager - менеджер общественного питания
cereals - хлопья
service - обслуживания
cutlery - ножевые изделия
delicious - очень вкусно
fixed price menu - меню с фиксированной ценой
full board (FB) - полный пансион
full English breakfast - полный английский завтрак
half board (HB) - полупансион
haute cuisine - высокая кухня
home-made dish - домашнее блюдо
impeccable - безупречный
profitable - рентабельный
reasonable - резонный
self-service - самообслуживание
snack - легкая закуска
table service usual - столовый сервис обычный
to take orders - принимать заказы
waiter service - официант

10. HISTORY OF TRANSPORTATION AS THE HISTORY OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM

Transportation companies are a vital aspect in the total tourist industry. Without the modern high-speed forms of transportation that are available to carry large numbers of people, tourism would be possible only for a tiny fraction of the population, because being in a different place from one's usual residence is an essential feature of tourism.

Steamships were developed at the beginning of the 19th century practically some time before the first railroads, but during the first half of the 19th century, they were used for the most part on inland waterways. In the second half of the 19th century, steamships that could cover longer distances were developed. By 1900, they were carrying passengers and freight on all the oceans of the world. Historically, the North Atlantic route between Europe and North America was the most important. In the period between the two world wars, steamships made scheduled crossings between New York and either Southampton or Cherbourg in only five days.

In the 19th century, railroads spread in Europe, North America, and many other parts of the world. They formed the first successful system of mass transportation, carrying crowds of people to different cities of Europe and America. The tourists on Thomas Cook's first organized tour in 1841 travelled by railroad.

Unfortunately for those people who prefer leisurely travel, both railroads and steamships have lost much of their business in the twenty years.

The automobile has replaced the railroad for most local travel, especially in the United States and in Europe. The automobile offers convenience. The traveler departs from his own home and arrives at his destination without transferring his luggage. The apparent costs of a trip by automobile are also lower.

The airplane has replaced the railway and the ship as a principal carrier for long-distance travel. The first transatlantic passenger flights began only after the war, when the jets were introduced in the 1950's and started to carry passengers. Soon after it motor buses or coaches appeared on the roads and in most cases replaced railroads and sometimes planes on many local and even long-distance routes.

Questions:

1. What's vital for the total tourist industry?
2. What's an essential feature of tourism in the world?
3. What did the railroads form in Europe and America?
4. In what way did the tourists on Thomas Cook's first organized tour in 1841 travel?
5. How were steamships used for the most part in the 19th century?
6. Which route was the most important in the period between the two world wars?
7. Why did both railroads and steamships lose much of their business in the twenty years?
8. Why has the automobile replaced the railroad for the most local travel?
9. When did the frequent service of the airplane begin?
10. What other means of transportation appeared on the roads and in most cases replaced railroads and sometimes trains on many local and even long-distance routes?

Vocabulary:

a mode of transportation - вид транспорта

passenger vehicle - пассажирский автомобиль

overall - в целом

time - время

carriage - каретка

horse-drawn carriages - конные экипажи

short- and long-distance scheduled services - короткие и дальние регулярные перевозки

private automobile ownership - частная автомобильная собственность

rural areas - сельские районы

charter air service - чартерные авиаперевозки

coaches - тренеры
a tiny fraction - крошечная фракция
adverse weather conditions - неблагоприятные погодные условия
place of issue - место выдачи
an aisle seat/ a window seat - сиденье у прохода / сиденье у окна
a booking-office - билетная касса
to board the train - сесть на поезд
carriage - каретка
cloak room - гардеробная комната
compartment - отделение
emergency brake - аварийный тормоз
fellow passenger - попутчик
sleeper - шпала
through train - через поезд

11. METHODS OF PAYMENT

Cash is a commonplace and simple method of payment. It's easy to use – customers don't need any special knowledge to pay in cash. It's ready for use any place any time – customers don't need any cashing facilities. In tourism and hospitality it's convenient to pay in cash when you owe small amounts. Cash is fine when you leave tips to porters and waiters, pay for taxis or buy gifts. It's not convenient to pay in cash when you buy wholesale or purchase expensive goods or services. When a customer purchases a tour package at a travel agency he will be generally expected to pay by credit card.

Cards are also referred to as plastic money. A credit card is a plastic card with which the card holder borrows money from the bank or another credit company and purchases goods and services up to a certain limit without immediate payment. Nowadays when a card is used, it will be verified to make sure that the card is valid and the customer has enough credit to pay for the purchase. The cardholder will be asked to sign a receipt with a record of the card details and the amount to be paid. Normally when a card is used for payments, its holder will be asked for his or her passport or other identification document. Together with the chip, magnetic stripe, security code and signature this helps to prevent a card fraud.

A traveler's cheque is a bank draft for personal use of the purchaser. It is signed by the purchaser at the time of purchase from the national bank. Traveller's cheques are issued in major hard currencies in fixed-amount notes, e.g. a 20 US dollar note or a 100 pound sterling note. With the introduction of euro as a single European currency in 2002, traveler's cheques are available in euro. The cheques bear the name of the issuing company, e.g. Thomas Cook Traveller's Cheques. A 1 per cent commission will be charged by the bank on sales of traveller's cheques. If a customer buys traveller's cheques in large amounts, banks will sell them on a commission-free basis.

E-money or electronic money is also known as electronic cash or digital currency. As the name suggests, it can be exchanged electronically or used for electronic payments only. Originally, when e-money was just introduced, it was based on the use of plastic cards: credit cards, debit cards, charge cards. Later on the range of cards was greatly increased: gift cards, fuel cards, farecards, telephone calling cards, and many more. According to the payment card technology the cards are grouped as magnetic stripe cards, smart cards (or chip cards), and contactless cards. Plastic cards can be read by physical contact, when they are swiped past a reading head in the electronic terminal, or remotely as with contactless cards. In the long run, almost all methods of payment will be replaced by e-money.

Questions:

1. What is understood by cash?
2. In what way is cash easy to use?
3. What is a traveller's cheque?
4. What does the term "e-money" mean?
5. What kind of plastic cards are used for payment?
6. What groups of cards are there according to the payment technology?

Vocabulary:

arrear - задолженность
bureau de change - бюро обмена
buying rate - скорость покупки
cash card - банковская карта
cash dispenser - банкомат
cheque book - чековая книжка
coin - монета
to countersign - чтобы подписать
countersignature - контрольная подпись
denomination - деноминация
exchange - обмен
hard currency - твердая валюта
loan - ссуда
note - запись
operating language - рабочий язык
over-the-counter transaction - внебиржевая сделка
pay off - заплатить
payable - к оплате
to pickpocket - карманник
selling rate - курс продажи
small change - небольшой изменение
cashing facilities - обналичивание средств

12. TRAVELLING BY CAR

There is nothing better than travelling by a fast car. Travel by car is a more personal experience, for there you can drive yourself.

You just sit down at the steering wheel, start the motor, step on the accelerator with your foot and off goes the car. You can go as slowly or as fast as you wish, stop when and where you choose; you park the car on the side of the road, get out and go wherever you like.

It is quite true that driving a car has some disadvantages. In town it is rather a nuisance with all those traffic «jams» or «hold - ups», round-abouts, detours and so on. It is not pleasant at all when you ride on a bumpy road or get a flat tyre, or still worse, when you get stuck in the mud.

But what can be better than a spin in a car on a week-end with your friend? As soon as you get out of the crowded town and see a long wide road in full view, what a thrill it is to feel the car rush forward at a touch of your foot, to feel the wind in your face, to see houses, trees and people flash past, to feel the real joy of speed.

Then, of course, you see much more of the country than you do in a plane. Suppose you are on vacation and have decided to take a trip in a car. What magnificent views you behold on your way — green fields, a road winding its way up the mountain with steep, grey cliffs on one side and a deep precipice on the other, a shining expanse of the sea wrapped in a blue noonday haze, the woods, the rows of acacia that stretch along the streets of the towns you pass through. Indeed your impressions are unforgettable.

Questions:

1. What are advantages of travelling by car?
2. What are disadvantages of driving a car?
3. Why are the impressions of a spin in a car unforgettable?

Vocabulary:

fast — быстрый, скорый

experience — опыт; случай, событие; впечатление, переживание

steering wheel — руль автомашины

start the motor — заводить мотор, двигатель

to step on the accelerator — нажать на педаль газа

wherever — где бы ни; куда бы ни

disadvantage — недостаток

nuisance — досада; неприятность

jam, hold-up — «пробка», затор (в уличном движении)

round-about, detour — окольный путь, обход; объезд

pleasant — приятный; радостный

bumpy — ухабистый, тряский (о дороге)

flat tyre — сдутая шина

to get stuck in the mud — завязнуть в грязи

spin — короткая прогулка; быстрая езда (на автомашине, велосипеде, лодке)

to rush forward — ехать, бежать вперед
to flash — быстро промелькнуть, пронестись, пробежать
joy — радость, счастье; восторг
speed — скорость; темп
magnificent — великолепный, величественный; производящий впечатление, внушительный
to behold (прош. вр. — beheld; прич. прош. вр. — beheld) — видеть, замечать, узреть; пристально смотреть, вглядываться, созерцать, рассматривать, наблюдать
steep — крутой
cliff—крутой склон, откос; холм; утес
precipice — обрыв, пропасть
expanse — простор, (широкое) пространство; ширь и простор
haze — легкий туман; дымка
wood — лес
impression — впечатление; ощущение
unforgettable — незабвенный; незабываемый, памятный

13. TRAVELLING BY SEA

Human beings are very inquisitive and like discovering different places. That is why people all over the world like to travel around the globe. It is not so interesting for them to see the world on TV today. It is precious to see it by their own. And when people come to beautiful beaches and sparkling blue waters, they understand it is really the amazing thing they wanted to see. There are countless adventures within reach on cruise vacation. There are many cruise companies in the world, and each of these companies can provide you a qualified service.

During the cruise people live in comfortable cabins. During sea days when a cruise liner is in the open sea, people can take sunbathes, swim in the swimming pools, play foosball in the slide or promenade around the ship visiting different decks. You can rent a cabin for two, four, six persons.

Cruise companies offer different tours during which you can discover the inhabitants of a coral reef on a glass-bottomed boat, go horseback riding on the beach, go mountain biking rain forests, explore ancient civilizations as you climb mysterious pyramids or snorkel with stingrays and dive 800 feet down in a research submarine. Days onboard are casual but full of joy and new impressions. But don't forget your camera and binoculars, so you don't miss a thing. Adventures are endless in this area. People can relax on a cruise surrounded by the white-sand beaches and beautiful turquoise waters of the most beautiful islands on the earth, find and visit tropical places where nature brings striking mountains and pristine beaches.

Such islands are home to rich culture and complex histories. There are archaic ruins, beaches, rain forests and many waterfalls. Here you can find new friends and buy a lot of souvenirs.

Questions:

1. Why do people like travelling?
2. What adventures can you have while travelling on a cruise ship?
3. Where do people live during the cruise?
4. Where can you go during sea days?
5. What kind of tours do cruise companies offer?
6. What can you go sightseeing when you are on a cruise vacation?

Vocabulary:

human beings — человеческие существа

inquisitive — любознательный, пытливый; любопытный

precious — большой ценности, важнее всего

sparkling — блестящий, искрящийся, сверкающий

to provide — снабжать; доставлять; обеспечивать

cabin — каюта

seaday — зд. морской день, день когда корабль находится в открытом море

open sea — открытое море

to take sunbathes — загорать

to play fools — дурачиться

slide — слайд; водная горка

to promenade — прогуливаться; гулять, разгуливать; прохаживаться

deck — палуба

horseback riding — прогулка верхом на лошади

mountain biking — прогулка на велосипеде по горам

rain forest — тропические леса

to climb — взбираться, влезать, восходить, карабкаться, подниматься

mysterious — таинственный; загадочный, непостижимый

to snorkel — плавать под водой с маской и трубкой

stingray — скат

to dive — нырять, бросаться в воду

research submarine — научно-исследовательская подводная лодка

casual — нерегулярный, временный

joy — радость, счастье; восторг

impression — впечатление (эффект, в особенности сильный эффект, произведенный на интеллект, сознание или чувства)

binoculars — бинокль

to explore — исследовать, рассматривать, анализировать

to relax — расслабляться, делать передышку, отдыхать

to stroll — прогуливаться, бродить, гулять (обычно медленно, праздно)

to surround — окружать; обступать

turquoise — бирюзовый цвет

pristine — древний, первоначальный, изначальный; чистый, нетронутый; неиспорченный

archaic — архаический, отживший
ruins — развалины
waterfall — водопад

14. TRAVELLING BY PLANE

No wonder that one of the latest means of travelling is travelling by plane. Nowadays people mostly travel by air. It combines both comfort and speed and you will reach the place of destination very quickly. No doubt, travelling by air is the most convenient and comfortable means of travelling. But if you are airsick the flight may seem not so nice to you. Unfortunately sometimes the flights are delayed because of unfavourable weather conditions, and one more inconvenience is jet-lag.

Before boarding the plane you must check in at the airport. Passengers are requested to arrive at the airport one hour before departure time on international flights and half an hour on domestic flights. You must register your tickets, weigh in and register the luggage.

The economy class limitation is 20 kg. First-class passengers are allowed 30 kg. Excess luggage must be paid for. Passengers are permitted, to take only some personal belongings with them into the cabin. These items include handbags, brief-cases or attache cases, umbrellas, coats and souvenirs bought at the tax-free shops at the airport. Each passenger is given a boarding pass to be shown at the departure gate and again to the stewardess when boarding the plane.

Before the plane takes off the stewardess gives you all the information about the flight, the speed and altitude. She asks you to fasten the belts and not to smoke. She will take care of you during the flight and will help you to get comfortable in your seat. Inside the cabins the air is always fresh and warm. The captain will welcome you on board, tell you all about the flight and the interesting places you are flying over. During the flight you can take a nap or have a chat, you can read and relax. In some planes you can watch video or listen to the music. When the plane is landing or taking off you have an opportunity to enjoy the wonderful scenery and landscapes. While travelling by plane you fly past various villages and cities at the sight of which realize how majestic and tremendous our planet is. Do not forget your personal belongings when leaving the plane. Landing formalities and customs regulation are about the same in-all countries. While still onboard the plane the passenger is given an arrival card to fill in, he fills in (in block letters) his name in full, country of residence, permanent address, purpose and length of visit; and address in the country he is visiting. After the passenger has disembarked, officials will examine (check) his passport and visa (to see if they are in order).

In some countries they will check the passenger's certificate of vaccination. When these formalities have been completed the passenger goes to the Customs for an examination of his luggage. The passenger is required to fill in a customs

declaration form. He must list all dutiable articles. Personal belongings may be brought in duty-free.

Here is a partial list of prohibited articles: firearms, drugs, in some countries — meat products, fresh fruit and vegetables. The Customs inspector may ask you to open your bags for inspection. After you are through with all customs formalities he will put a stamp on each piece of luggage.

Questions:

1. Why do people mostly travel by air nowadays?
2. Why may the flight seem not so nice to you?
3. What are other inconveniences of flying?
4. When are passengers requested to arrive at the airport?
5. What is the luggage limitation?
6. What must passengers do in case they have some excess luggage?
7. What are passengers permitted to take with them into the cabin?
8. When is a boarding pass to be shown?
9. What do stewardesses do during the flight?
10. What can you do during the flight?
11. What opportunities do passengers have when the plane is landing or taking off?
12. What is the passenger given to fill in while still onboard the plane?
13. What are the formalities to be completed after the passenger has disembarked?
14. What must you list in your customs declaration?
15. What are prohibited articles?
16. What will the Customs inspector do after you are through with all customs formalities?

Vocabulary:

no wonder — не удивительно, что

means — средства

nowadays — в наши дни; теперь; в наше время

to combine — соединять, сочетать

speed — скорость; быстрота

destination — место назначения, пункт назначения

to board — всходить на борт (любого судна)

to check in — регистрировать(ся)

convenient — удобный, подходящий; пригодный

comfortable — уютный, удобный

to be airsick — страдать воздушной болезнью

flight — полет

unfortunately — к несчастью, к сожалению

to delay — откладывать; задерживать, замедлять

unfavourable — неблагоприятный; неблагоприятный; неутешительный

weather conditions — погодные условия

jet-lag — нарушение суточного ритма организма, расстройство биоритмов в

связи с перелетом через несколько часовых поясов
to request — просить, требовать
to weigh — взвешивать; весить
limitation — ограничение
to allow — позволять, разрешать
excess — избыточный; превышающий норму
to permit — позволять, разрешать, давать разрешение
personal belongings --- лично принадлежащие вещи
brief-case — портфель
attache case — кожаный ручной плоский чемоданчик (для книг, документов)
umbrella — зонт, зонтик
boarding pass — посадочный талон
departure — отправление, отбытие
altitude — высота
fasten one's belts — пристегнуть ремни
to take care — заботиться
to take a nap — вздремнуть
to have a chat — поболтать, побеседовать
to relax — расслабляться
to take off — авиац. взлететь
opportunity — шанс, возможность
scenery — вид, пейзаж; ландшафт
landscape — ландшафт, пейзаж
to realize — представлять себе; понимать, осознавать
majestic — величественный, грандиозный, величавый
customs regulations — таможенные инструкции
to fill in — заполнять
country of residence — страна пребывания
permanent address — постоянное место жительства
purpose — назначение, намерение, цель
length — длина; расстояние
to disembark — высаживаться
to examine — проверять
vaccination — вакцинация
to complete - завершать, заканчивать, кончать, оканчивать
customs declaration — таможенная декларация
to list — вносить в список; составлять список; регистрировать
dutiable — подлежащий обложению (таможенной) пошлиной
article — вещь, предмет
partial — частичный, неполный
prohibited — запрещенный
firearms — огнестрельное оружие
stamp — штамп, штемпель, печать

15. REGULATION, RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT IN TOURISM

The roles of government are very important for tourism. They set the policy of their country towards tourism. To regulate the different components of the tourist industry is one of their tasks.

Travel is made easier when there are no visa requirements and when the entry formalities are simple. Visa is a travel document that gives permission for a foreigner to enter, or in some cases to leave another country. It is important for tourist promotion to relax the kind of regulation that is usually called “red tape”. National policy can also discourage tourism. Any country cannot provide accommodations and catering services or is able to restrict the length of time a traveler can stay in that country. To restrict entry some countries have set visa and entrance requirements.

Governments are also involved in day-to-day regulation of tourism including various kinds of licensing.

A license to be taken is a document giving permission to carry on a particular kind of activity after paying a fee.

Governments perform the research and analysis that result in statistics on the tourist industry. Research generally means collecting data that can be put into statistical form and the analysis means interpreting trends from the statistical figures. Research involves travel statistics, tourist expenditures, the purpose of the trip or the tourist’s reactions to his holiday. Deeper research makes it possible to find out why tourists visited a particular resort and what their reactions were. The main aim of another kind of research is to determine the social impact of tourism on an area. It is necessary for governments to be engaged in promoting a flow of tourism. In many countries, tourism is so important that its interests are represented at the ministerial level of government. To promote tourism counties or regions try to relax some regulations. The location and density of new developments to be regulated affects spreading the economic benefits more widely. Where government investment in tourism is not direct, there must be an indirect investment in the form of building or improving the infrastructure. The infrastructure consists of those things that are necessary before development can take place – roads, electricity, telephone service, airports, and water supply. The facilities to be based on the infrastructure are often called the superstructure. Before a government undertakes tourist development, it usually attempts to determine the market potential – the number or percentage of travelers it can hope to attract. This is followed by studies of the social impact and very often of the environmental impact.

The research is followed by the actual planning and development that include improvement of the infrastructure, financial arrangements, and construction of the superstructure. The tendency at the present time is in favor of careful research and planning instead of unrestricted growth and expansion.

Questions:

1. Why are the roles of government important for tourism?
2. In what ways can travel be made easier?
3. How can national policy discourage tourism?
4. What is a license?
5. What does research in tourism mean?
6. What does research involve?
7. What does the analysis of tourism mean?
8. What is the purpose of deeper research?
9. What is another kind of research aimed at?
10. How can tourism be promoted?
11. What does the infrastructure consist of?
12. What is the superstructure?
13. What is the market potential?
14. What is the tendency in tourist development at the present time?

Vocabulary:

research - исследование

involve - вовлекать, включать в себя; вызывать (последствия)

market - рынок

engage - привлекать (внимание); занимать (время);

to be engaged in - заниматься чем-л.

promote - содействовать, поощрять, поддерживать, рекламировать

promotion - содействие, поощрение, стимулирование, рекламирование

regulate - контролировать; регулировать

regulation - правило, предписание, инструкция, регулирование

requirement - требование

entry formalities - формальности при въезде в страну, нормы и правила въезда в страну

discourage - отговаривать, отсоветовать; расхолаживать

encourage - поощрять, поддерживать; стимулировать

restrict - ограничивать

fee - вступительный (членский) взнос; гонорар, вознаграждение; плата за обучение

maintain - поддерживать; сохранять; содержать (в исправности, в чистоте)

expenditure - трата, расход; потребление

impact - влияние, воздействие

undertake - предпринимать; брать на себя обязательства

benefit - польза, выгода, преимущество

attempt - пробовать, пытаться

to be in favour of - быть за ...; стоять за что-либо; быть сторонником чего-либо

government - правительство

relax - ослаблять, смягчать, делать менее строгим
day-to-day - повседневный
county - графство (англ.), округ (америк.)
development - развитие; сооружение
red tape - бюрократические процедуры

16. TOUR OPERATORS

Tour operators can be considered the wholesalers of the industry. Their product, which is a service, is the packaged tour.

Packaged tours offer transportation, hotel accommodations and transfer to and from the airport. The tourist pays a lower price for this package than if he were trying to make all the arrangements on his own.

In addition to the basic features, the tour package may also offer meals, entertainment, sightseeing, a rental car and many other extras.

The first tour in the modern sense was put together by Thomas Cook in 1841. Cook was soon offering tours all over the world, and the idea gained acceptance very quickly not only in England but also in other European countries and in the United States.

The firm of Thomas Cook and Sons has remained a major force in the travel industry, despite the number of changes in ownership. The great increase in tourism that took place in the 1960s, especially in Europe, was in part the result of the emergence of a number of firms whose chief business was packaging and operating tours.

The typical package that the European tour operators put together consisted of the least expensive two-week holiday tour. It was primarily intended for northern Europeans who wanted a Mediterranean vacation. As the competition among the operators brought prices down, many people who had never travelled before were encouraged to try a trip abroad. Both tourism in general and the tour operating companies themselves expanded very quickly.

The rapid expansion, however, has also resulted in many changes in management and methods of operation for the firms in the business. A sounder financial base became necessary, since tour groups were sometimes left stranded because tour operators did not have sufficient cash to pay the price of the aircraft charter.

Tours are also arranged for employees and their spouses by corporations. The corporations typically offer these vacation trips as a reward for superior sales effort or as an incentive to improve performance. This type of tour is not open to the general public, but it is welcomed by the airlines and by hotel operators in the established resorts that frequently attract business of this kind.

It is possible to distinguish between two general types of tours. One is the holiday package that has a resort hotel as its destination. While local sightseeing or entertainment may be included in the package, the tours are generally of the "no frills" variety — in other words, without expensive extras. The major attractions

usually include sun, sea and activities such as golf or tennis that are offered by the resort itself. Local colour is not important — many holiday-makers are hardly aware of what country their hotel is in.

The second is the guided tour that features sightseeing or some other special attraction. These tours are accompanied by a guide who is in charge of travel arrangement and activities. The activity offered by the tour is its principal attraction. The tour may combine travel with education. Most of these tours include several different destinations and a good deal of local travel within one region. Thus, they require careful arrangement and coordination of accommodations, local transportation, luggage handling, and all the other details that accompany any kind of travel.

The person who leads such tours is the tour guide. He is multilingual, he relates well to other people, and he deals with the variety of problems that arise not only in making travel arrangements, but also in carrying them out.

He deals with the problems of lost luggage and unsatisfactory hotel accommodations, with rainy days and fatigue, with sudden illness, and with interpersonal problems that arise among the members of the group.

There are many advantages in the packaged tours, the most obvious being the price. When airplane tickets and hotel rooms are reserved in blocks by the tour operators, considerable savings are passed on to the customers. Many people would never travel at all without the price inducements offered by packaged tours.

A second advantage is the opportunity for tourist to make all his travel arrangements in one place at one time.

The independent traveller — one who does not travel as a member of a group — often has to go to considerable trouble to put the different pieces of his trip together. Airline seats may not be available when he wants them, or he may not be able to secure the hotel accommodations that he wants.

Even when a travel agent makes the arrangements, these difficulties still exist. The tour offers convenience as one of its inducements. A third advantage can be summed up in the term accessibility. Tours make it possible for people to visit many remote areas that would otherwise be too difficult for them to try to see on their own. Tour operators have made countless places throughout the world accessible to the general public.

Questions:

1. Why are tour operators considered wholesalers of the tourist industry?
2. What do packaged tours offer?
3. When was the first packaged tour put together?
4. How did the emergence of a great number of tourist firms influence tourism in general?
5. What was the result of the competition among the tour operators?
6. What did the rapid expansion of tourism lead to?
7. What types of tours does the text mention?
8. What is the difference between a holiday package and a guided tour? I

9. What qualities does a tour guide need? Why?
 10. What are the advantages of a packaged tour?

Vocabulary:

speculation - размышление; предположение; теория наудачу
 on speculation on spec - с расчетом на выгоду
 sophisticated - изощренный; искушенный в житейских делах, опытный
 to plummet - резко пойти вниз; упасть (о ценах)
 to boost sales - способствовать росту, увеличению продаж
 to boost - поднимать; помогать подняться; повышать; способствовать росту
 early indication - первоначальные показатели
 capacity - вместимость; емкость; возможность; мощность;
 производительность
 to estimate - оценивать; давать оценку; составлять смету, подсчитывать
 приблизительно; прикидывать по предварительным расчетам
 estimated - предполагаемый; расчетный
 to remain - оставаться; пребывать в прежнем состоянии
 remainder - остаток; остальные
 to squeeze margins to cut prices well below the brochure rates - им придется
 урезать прибыли и снизить цены намного по сравнению с теми, что указаны в
 брошюрах
 to part with - расставаться (с деньгами); платить
 reluctant - делающий что-л. с неохотой; вынужденный, сопротивляющийся
 чему-л.
 a share - акция
 the stock market - рынок ценных бумаг
 to outline - обрисовать; наметить в общих чертах; кратко; описать
 early launch of brochures - ранний выпуск рекламных брошюр
 to launch - спускать судно на воду; начинать; пускать в ход; предпринимать;
 запускать

17. SOCIAL SERVICE AND TOURISM

Social-and-cultural service and tourism are considered to have become an important feature of our time.

People traveled, travel, will travel. Just travelling created the base for tourism. There exist many classifications of this phenomenon, it performs various functions. One traveller loves exploring and discovering things: churches and castles, different ways of life. Some travellers want to get away from what they do all year round. Some of them say - "No sightseeing, no shopping, just a relaxation and sunbathing". While on holiday tourists may choose a quiet place with nearly empty beaches or popular resorts packed with people. A lot of people enjoy active

open-air holidays such as walking, mountaineering, hiking, sailing, horse-riding, motoring.

Travelling holidays are not only relaxation, but they could be so much more – education, culture, the chance to meet different people. Young people prefer hitch-hiking, which is a very cheap way of travelling. Camping, which once was considered poor way of spending holidays for boyscouts and students, is becoming more popular now.

Social-and-cultural service and tourism are closely connected. They deal with transport (land, water, air), accommodation industry. The latter is an essential part of tourism.

The hotels offer rest, food, drink, facilities for recreation. They usually contain restaurants, cocktail lounges, facilities for social functions, conventions, conferences, entertainment.

Tourism is a very complicated business sphere. Because of its complexity there is a wide variety of different careers. The top people in this industry are managers. The majority of them hold management positions. They have a broad range of experience and coordinate a wide range of activities. This business requires highly qualified and well-trained specialists. The trend in recent years has been to select management trainees from the graduates of the universities. They must know the travelling organization and hotel field, advertising and public-relations technique. The executive staff includes many people with special skills, experience, professional training.

While studying at the university the students are to prepare for their future job, to become good specialists, to be ready to do their professional duties and make a successful career.

Questions:

1. What do social-and cultural service and tourism mean nowadays?
2. What kind of human activities is considered to have created the base for tourism?
3. What functions may tourism perform?
4. How do young people prefer spending their holidays?
5. What kind of activities does tourism business deal with?
6. What does accommodation industry include?
7. Are there any opportunities for job and career in tourism sphere?
8. What kind of specialists does this business require?
9. What activities are the tourism managers engaged in?
10. What are the recent trends in selecting management trainees? Why?

Vocabulary:

nobility - благородство, радушие

pride - гордость

landmark - веха, значимое место

serf - крепостной

dash - броситься, ринуться
strive (for) - стремиться (к)
indigenous - туземный, местный
stroll - прогуливаться, странствовать
church - церковь
clerical - клерикальный, церковный
fascinate - очаровывать, пленять
well-off - состоятельный, зажиточный
quay - причал, набережная
head - направлять (ся)

18. ECOLOGICAL PROBLEMS

Ecology is a science which studies the relationship between all forms of life on our planet and the environment.

Since ancient times Nature has served Man, giving him everything he needs: air to breathe, food to eat, water to drink, wood for building and fuel for heating his home. For thousands of years people lived in harmony with the environment and it seemed to them that the resources of Nature had no end or limit.

With the industrial revolution our negative influence on Nature began to increase. Large cities with thousands of polluting plants and factories can be found nowadays all over the world. They pollute the air we breathe, the water we drink, the fields where our crops are grown. Big cities suffer from smog. Cars with their engines have become the main source of polluting in industrial countries.

Vast forests are cut down everywhere for the needs of industries. As a result many kinds of animals, birds, fish and plants are disappearing nowadays.

The pollution of the air and the world's oceans and the thinning the ozone layer are the other problems arising from men's careless attitude to ecology.

Active measures should be taken to save the life on our planet. There is an international organization called Greenpeace which is doing much to preserve the environment.

Questions:

1. Why are the wild animals in danger?
2. What climatic changes are the most threatening?
3. Is there any way to make our air cleaner?
4. What is Green Peace?
5. What are the main ecological problems?

Vocabulary:

a science - наука
the relationship - отношение
all forms of life - все формы жизни
wood - дерево

the environment - окружение
breathe - дышать
harmony - гармония
ecology - экология
water to drink - вода пить
limit - предел
the industrial revolution - индустриальная революция
negative influence - негативное влияние
to increase - увеличивать
thousands of - тысячи
polluting - загрязняющий
pollute the air - загрязнять воздух
engines - двигатели
main source - основной источник

19. TOURISM IN KAZAKHSTAN

As the ninth largest country in the world, Kazakhstan is full of plenty to explore. Much of the country is covered in vast steppe, broken by mountains, forests, lakes, and cities. The geographical size and diversity of the country, plus relatively well-developed infrastructure, means that tourism in Kazakhstan is growing and expanding. Any trip to Kazakhstan is an opportunity to explore this beautiful country and all its unexpected destinations.

It would be easy to make a trip to Kazakhstan that just stayed in the big cities. Almaty is the historical capital and the biggest city, full of tree-lined streets, cute cafes, and beautiful museums. Nur-Sultan is the modern capital, where buildings were designed by international architects and the streets are wide and clean. Almaty and Nur-Sultan are global cities, where it's easy to find world-class dining, accommodations, and entertainment.

Kazakhstan also has a rich culture and history, from spiritual leaders to artisans and performers. Alongside modern concert halls and international-level performers are traditional musicians, keeping alive generations of songs and poems. Applied arts are still popular for decorating houses and yurts, while museums hold some of the finest examples of workmanship by Kazakh artists.

Kazakh nomads have always lived in harmony with nature, so the many natural sights are important in Kazakhstan. From ancient days, when people were leaving drawings on the rocks in Tamgaly, to the modern day, where there are vast nature reserves across the country. Whether you want to head out on a short hike, a quick picnic, or a longer trek through the mountains or steppes, there's no shortage of beautiful places.

Baikonur is a truly unique experience - there are few places where you can see a rocket launch for yourself. Baikonur is the largest space launch facility in the world, and the only place currently launching manned flights to the International Space Station. You'll tour the facility, learn about the history of spaceflight at the

museums and memorials, and then witness a rocket launch - a truly unforgettable experience.

From the openness of the steppes to the hustle of the big cities, Kazakhstan has plenty to explore. No matter what your interests are, or your reasons for visiting Kazakhstan, you'll be sure to find a tour to fit you and take you to new places beyond your imagination.

Kazakhstan Tourism Packages

Kazakhstan tourism packages are the selection of suggested tour itineraries that were put together to help you to plan your trip. Kazakhstan is a tourist friendly and safe country. You can travel independently on your own by doing your homework using travel books, information available on the internet and using our suggested tour programs on our website. You can also request Advantour to put together your Kazakhstan tourism package to save time and have an optimal itinerary to fit your requirements. We will utilize our local knowledge and experience to prepare the tailor-made private tour itinerary that will fit your schedule and interests. Our itineraries take into account feedbacks we get from our past travelers and latest developments in tourism. You can also sign up to one of our escorted small group tours that have guaranteed departure dates throughout the year. These tours are very popular, allow to save money by sharing costs with other group members.

Nature Tourism

You can't mention Kazakhstan without talking about the many natural sights around the country. There are several great destinations not far from Almaty that make for great short trips, like Medeu, a skating rink nestled in a mountain valley. Saryarka, in the northern steppes, is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. Migratory birds and other endangered species, such as the Saiga antelope, live in these untouched steppes and wetlands, some of the most pristine and important in the world. And Alakol Lake, in eastern Kazakhstan, is a famous nature reserve with opportunities for hiking and relaxing. There are so many options of things to do out in nature in Kazakhstan, from hiking through the mountains to spending a night in a yurt out in the broad steppes - it's all up to you.

Questions:

1. What place does Kazakhstan occupy in the territory among countries in the world?
2. What is applied art for?
3. What is Kazakhstan travel packages?
4. What is Nature Tourism?
5. What is Medeu?

Vocabulary:

largest country - самая большая страна

full of - полон

plenty - много

to explore - исследовать

to cover - покрывать
vast steppe - обширная степь
relatively - относительно
well-developed - хорошо развитый
infrastructure - инфраструктура
geographical size - географический размер
trip - поездка
unexpected destinations - неожиданные направления
nomads - кочевники
harmony - гармония
natural sights - природные достопримечательности
the rocks - камни
ancient - древний
a quick picnic - быстрый пикник
a longer trek - более длинный путь
shortage - нехватка
beautiful places - красивые места
destinations - направления
a mountain valley - горная долина
antelope - антилопа
wetlands - водно-болотные угодья
steppes - степи
the broad steppes - широкие степи

20. HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL TOURISM

Kazakhstan was once at the center of the world, a destination for pilgrims and travelers from far and wide. Khoja Ahmed Yasawi was a famous poet and Sufi leader, memorialized by a mausoleum built by Timur in Turkestan at the end of the 14th century. His poetry and religious ideology brought people from far and wide to what is now southern Kazakhstan. His legacy lives on with akyns, improvisational poets and musicians that have written some of the most enduring works of Kazakh culture. If you spend a night in a yurt and enjoy a dinner of traditional dishes followed by a performance of a couple kuy (as songs are called in Kazakh), you'll be sure to leave with warm memories. There are also many museums that show off Kazakhstan's rich history and culture, from musical instruments to fine arts. The Kazakh Museum of Folk Musical Instruments in Almaty is full of a wide variety of instruments and beautiful exhibits showing the history and heights of music in Kazakhstan.

Urban Tourism

Kazakhstan's cities are growing, with millions of people now calling the largest cities home. Nur-Sultan, the capital, is a newer city, since it only became the capital in 1997. With world-class architecture, museums, and concert halls, Nur-Sultan is a busy international city with plenty to keep the most intrepid traveler

occupied. Almaty is the southern capital, a more historic city with three-lined streets and graceful older buildings (check out the Zenkov Cathedral, built from wood without a single nail). Go shopping, stroll along the streets, enjoy a gourmet meal, or spend a day in a museum - the big cities are an important part of Kazakhstan's tourism.

Baikonur Tourism

Baikonur is a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to explore space for yourself - without ever leaving the ground. Baikonur is the first and largest space launch facility in the world, famous for launching Yuri Gagarin on the first manned space flight. The museums at Baikonur are excellent for telling all about the history of space flight, while tours through the facility as it is today bring you closer to modern science and space exploration. You'll also be able to see a rocket launch for yourself, a truly unforgettable experience best seen with your own eyes.

Questions:

1. Who was Khoja Ahmed Yasawi?
2. What does the Kazakh Museum of Folk Musical Instruments in Almaty show?
3. When did Nur Sultan city become the capital of Kazakhstan?
4. What is Baikonur?
5. Who was Yuri Gagarin?

Vocabulary:

a destination - пункт назначения

pilgrims - паломники

a famous poet – известный поэт

poetry - поэзия

religious ideology - религиозная идеология

southern – южный

a yurt - юрта

enjoy a dinner - наслаждаться ужином

a night - ночь

traditional dishes - традиционные блюда

a performance - представление

a couple – пара

millions of people - миллионы людей

the largest cities - самые большие города

the capital - столица

architecture - архитектура

the southern capital - южная столица

stroll along the streets - прогуляться по улицам

an important part - важная часть

1. DIALOGUE

Business trip (Командировка)

По-английски

Перевод на русский

Greta: How was your business trip, Liam?

Грета: Как прошла твоя командировка, Лайам?

Liam: It was great! I did everything that was planned and I still had some time for sightseeing.

Лайам: Отлично! Я сделал все, что планировал и у меня все еще осталось время на поход по достопримечательностям.

Greta: Wait, did you go to Berlin or Paris?

Грета: Минуточку, ты был в Берлине или Париже?

Liam: This time the meeting was in Paris, so I managed to go explore the Eiffel Tower and the Champs Elysees.

Лайам: На этот раз собрание было в Париже, так что мне удалось побывать на Эйфелевой башне и на Елисейских полях.

Greta: How interesting! You should tell me all about it.

Грета: Как интересно! Ты должен рассказать мне все об этом.

Liam: Well, the day we arrived, we were warmly welcomed at the Charles de Gaulle airport by the French party.

Лайам: Ну, в день нашего прибытия нас тепло встретила французская сторона в аэропорту Шарль-де-Голль.

Greta: What language did you choose to communicate? As far as I know you don't know French well.

Грета: На каком же языке вы общались? Насколько я знаю, ты не очень хорошо владеешь французским.

Liam: They provided us with a professional translator. Her name was Sarah and she accompanied us everywhere during these five days.

Лайам: Они снабдили нас профессиональным переводчиком. Ее звали Сара и она везде сопровождала нас на протяжении этих пяти дней.

Greta: I see. That explains a lot. Where did you go after the arrival?

Грета: Понятно. Это многое объясняет. Куда вы поехали после прибытия?

Liam: They drove us to one posh hotel where we could rest after the flight. After that we had to participate at one important meeting

Лайам: Они отвезли нас в роскошный отель, где нам удалось отдохнуть после полета. Затем нам нужно было поучаствовать в одном важном

with international colleagues. I met many interesting people there. The meeting went well. Then we were free to explore the city.

Greta: Did you go anywhere special in the evening?

Liam: We went to one Japanese restaurant for some sushi. The place was in the very heart of the city, so we enjoyed the perfect window-view.

Greta: What else did you do during this business trip?

Liam: There were two more meetings on the second day of our arrival. I was lucky to meet the CEO of the company. He turned out to be a very talkative and open-hearted person.

Greta: How did you spend the third day in Paris?

Liam: I have an old school friend who lives there. I wrote him a message saying that I'll be in Paris for several days and he agreed to meet at some point. We went to the street cafe to chat.

Greta: I bet he was excited to see you.

Liam: He was, indeed. We had a great time there. I started to get used to these street-type French cafes or coffee places.

Greta: Have you seen anyone playing the hand-organ in the streets? I know that Parisian street

совещании с международными коллегами. Я там познакомился со многими интересными людьми. Совещание прошло хорошо. Ну, а после мы могли спокойно исследовать город.

Грета: Вы ходили куда-нибудь вечером?

Лайам: Мы пошли в один японский ресторан покушать суши. Это место было в самом центре города и мы наслаждались прекрасными видами из окна.

Грета: Чем вы еще занимались во время командировки?

Лайам: На второй день прибытия было еще два совещания. Мне посчастливилось познакомиться с генеральным директором компании. Он оказался довольно разговорчивым и радушным человеком.

Грета: Как вы провели третий день пребывания в Париже?

Лайам: У меня есть один старый школьный друг, который живет там. Я написал ему сообщение о том, что несколько дней проведу в Париже и он согласился где-нибудь встретиться. Мы пошли в уличное кафе поболтать.

Грета: Держу пари, он был рад увидеть тебя.

Лайам: Да, так и было. Мы отлично провели время. Я даже начал привыкать к этим уличным французским кафе и кофейням.

Грета: Ты видел кого-нибудь, играющим по улицам на шарманке? Я знаю, что парижская уличная музыка романтична.

music is romantic.

Liam: I have. I've seen this old gentleman a couple of times playing some music in front of our hotel.

Greta: Now, my last question is: "Have you managed to fall in love in Paris?"

Liam: No, I haven't. I've met a wonderful girl on my last day, but we decided to stay friends.

Greta: What a pity! Everyone I know tend to fall in love in that city of romance.

Liam: Maybe next time I will. However, all things considered I think my trip was successful. We signed a couple of valuable contracts.

Greta: That's good to hear. Next time it's my turn to go the Parisian headquarters.

Лайам: Да. Я видел пару раз одного пожилого человека, играющего музыку прямо напротив нашего отеля.

Грета: И мой последний вопрос таков: "Тебе удалось влюбиться в Париже?"

Лайам: Нет. В последний день я встретил прекрасную девушку, но мы решили быть друзьями.

Грета: Как жаль! Все, кого я знаю, стараются влюбиться в этом городе любви.

Лайам: Возможно, в следующий раз я так и поступлю. Однако, подводя итоги, я думаю, что моя командировка была удачной. Мы подписали несколько значимых контрактов.

Грета: Приятно слышать. В следующий раз моя очередь ехать в парижский головной офис.

2. DIALOGUE

Unsuccessful trip (Неудачное путешествие)

По-английски

Martha: Hi, Alice! How are you? Haven't seen you for ages.

Alice: Hi, Martha! It's good to see you. I'm fine, although I have just come back from the very unsuccessful trip.

Martha: Why? What happened?

Alice: Well, together with our class tutor we went mountain

Перевод на русский

Марта: Привет, Элис! Как ты? Давно не виделись.

Элис: Привет, Марта. Рада тебя видеть. У меня все хорошо, хотя я только недавно вернулась из очень неудачного путешествия.

Марта: Почему? Что случилось?

Элис: Ну, вместе с нашим классным руководителем мы отправились в

hiking and the trip turned out to be horrible. пеший тур по горам и поездка обернулась кошмаром.

Martha: It's a shame you didn't like it. I wish we went together with my class to such trip. Марта: Я сожалею, что тебе не понравилось. Лучше бы мы вместе с классом отправились в такое путешествие.

Alice: I don't mean mountain hiking is a bad experience. It's just that we had lots of unfortunate things happening on the way. Элис: Я не имею в виду, что горный туризм – это плохое приключение. Просто у нас по пути было много неудачных моментов.

Martha: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that! Марта: Мне жаль это слышать!

Alice: At first we've been already rather far from the city when we realized we forgot to take our water bottles. That was a real disaster! Luckily, Mrs. Janett had some money and we bought five bottles of water at the roadside store. Элис: Сначала, когда мы уже были довольно далеко от города, мы обнаружили, что забыли взять свои бутылки с водой. Это была настоящая катастрофа! К счастью, у миссис Дженетт были с собой деньги и мы купили пять бутылок воды в придорожном магазине.

Martha: You're lucky you weren't too far from the inhabited locality. Марта: Вам повезло, что вы были не так далеко от населенного пункта.

Alice: Yes, indeed. The second misfortune happened an hour later, when one of my classmates lost consciousness. His parents forgot to warn the teacher that he sometimes gets dizzy after intense physical activities. Элис: Да, действительно. Второе происшествие случилось часом позже, когда один из моих одноклассников упал в обморок. Его родители забыли предупредить учителя, что иногда у него кружится голова во время интенсивных физических нагрузок.

Martha: Oh, that's a nightmare! Марта: О, это просто кошмар!

Alice: Indeed. We were already far from the nearest village and there was no chance to call for a doctor. Элис: Действительно. Мы были уже далеко от ближайшей деревни и не было никаких шансов вызвать доктора.

Martha: What did you do? Did you save him? Is he alright now? Марта: Что же вы сделали? Вы спасли его? С ним все в порядке теперь?

Alice: He's fine now, but at that very moment we were utterly Элис: Он теперь в норме, но на тот момент мы были сильно напуганы.

frightened. Mrs. Janett knew the basics of first aid and she managed to bring him into consciousness. However, the hiking mood was already lost and we were all a bit upset.

Martha: I can imagine.

Alice: After that case all we did was to take care of Alex – the boy who lost consciousness.

Martha: That's an unsuccessful hiking. Did you at least manage to enjoy the beauty of nature?

Alice: Well, we tried to, but it wasn't easy in such atmosphere at all.

Martha: Anything else that spoiled your trip?

Alice: Yes, on the way back we noticed that there is a girl missing from my class.

Martha: What? That's not funny at all? What happened?

Alice: She sprained her ankle on the way and didn't tell anyone. After all, she had to stay as she couldn't follow us. The most surprising thing was that nobody noticed her absence.

Martha: Did you go very far from her?

Alice: More than three kilometers.

Martha: What did you do then?

Alice: We stopped and sent two

Миссис Дженетт знает основы первой медицинской помощи и ей удалось вернуть его в сознание. В любом случае, туристический настрой был уже утерян и мы все были немного расстроены.

Марта: Могу себе представить.

Элис: После этого случая все, что мы делали, так это заботились об Алексее – мальчике, который терял сознание.

Марта: Это точно неудачное путешествие. Вам хоть удалось полюбоваться красотой окружающей природы?

Элис: Ну, мы старались, но в такой атмосфере это было нелегко.

Марта: Что-нибудь еще испортило ваш поход?

Элис: Да, по пути назад мы заметили, что одной девочки из нашего класса нет.

Марта: Что? Это вовсе не смешно? Что же случилось?

Элис: Она подвернула лодыжку по дороге и никому ничего не сказала. В итоге, ей пришлось остановиться, так как она не могла дальше за нами идти. Но самое удивительное, это то, что никто не заметил ее отсутствия.

Марта: Вы далеко ушли от нее?

Элис: Более трех километров.

Марта: Что же вы сделали потом?

Элис: Мы остановились и отправили

boys to find her. Luckily the route was familiar, so they quickly found her and brought back.

двух мальчиков на ее поиски. К счастью, дорожка была проторенная, поэтому они быстро ее нашли и привели обратно.

Martha: I'm glad everything went well for her and for all of you.

Марта: Я рада, что все хорошо сложилось для нее и для вас.

Alice: Yes, I'm surprised we all returned from that trip safe and sound.

Элис: Да, я сама удивлена, что мы все вернулись из этого путешествия в целости и сохранности.

Martha: Is Mrs. Janett all right?

Марта: С миссис Дженетт все в порядке?

Alice: She is fine now, but on that day she was also disappointed by the trip.

Элис: Да, сейчас она в норме, но в тот день она была также расстроена нашим путешествием.

3. DIALOGUE

Ravelling (Путешествие)

По-английски

Mary: When are you flying to Barcelona, Kevin?

Kevin: I'm leaving on Tuesday and coming back on Friday.

Mary: So, you are going to have three relaxing days there.

Kevin: I wouldn't say so. It's a business trip on the first place. But if I have a free time I will visit some sights of the city.

Mary: Are you flying by Spanish airlines?

Kevin: I've go the tickets from Delta Airlines. It's not the first time when I'm flying with them. Delta is a

Перевод на русский

Мэри: Когда ты летишь в Барселону, Кевин?

Кевин: Я уезжаю во вторник и вернусь в пятницу.

Мэри: Так, у тебя будет три неспешных дня там.

Кевин: Я бы так не сказал. В первую очередь, это деловая поездка. Но если у меня выдастся свободная минутка, я посету некоторые достопримечательности города.

Мэри: Ты летишь испанскими авиалиниями?

Кевин: Мои билеты от Дельта авиалиний. Я не в первый раз лечу с ними. Дельта – надежная компания.

reliable company.

Mary: I see. Have you prepared your swimming trunks and sunscreen? You know, it's really hot in Barcelona at this time of the year. And there are wonderful beaches.

Kevin: I heard so. But I'm not a fan of swimming and sunbathing. I prefer to spend my time seeing places of interest. And I know that Barcelona is full of such places.

Mary: For example, which sight would you like to visit?

Kevin: Let's say, La Sagrada Familia.

Mary: What's that?

Kevin: It's a The Temple of the Holy Family in Barcelona. This building is famous as one of the best projects of Antonio Gaudi.

Mary: And who is Antonio Gaudi?

Kevin: Mary, I think that you should go to Spain, not me. You know almost nothing about this country. Gaudi is the most famous Spanish architect.

Mary: Ah, I see. I would love to visit Spain some day. And I'm a bit jealous that you are flying there. Will you bring me a small present from there?

Kevin: Yes, of course. What do you want?

Mary: Something really small, like a postcard or a magnet with a nice view of Barcelona.

Мэри: Понятно. Ты уже приготовил свои плавки и солнцезащитный крем? Знаешь, ведь в Барселоне очень жарко в это время года. И там прекрасные пляжи.

Кевин: Да, я слышал. Но я не фанат плавания и загораения под солнцем. Я предпочитаю проводить время, посещая интересные достопримечательности. И я знаю, что в Барселоне их полно.

Мэри: Ну, например, какие достопримечательности ты хотел бы посетить?

Кевин: Например, "Саграда Фамилия".

Мэри: А что это?

Кевин: Это Храм Святого Семейства в Барселоне. Это здание известно, как один из лучших проектов Антонио Гауди.

Мэри: А кто такой Антонио Гауди?

Кевин: Мэри, я думаю, что тебе стоит съездить в Испанию, а не мне. Ты почти ничего не знаешь об этой стране. Гауди – самый известный испанский архитектор.

Мэри: А, понятно. Я бы хотела как-нибудь посетить Испанию. И я даже немного завидую, что ты туда летишь. Ты привезешь мне небольшой сувенир оттуда?

Кевин: Да, конечно. Чего бы тебе хотелось?

Мэри: Что-то совсем небольшое, как открытка или магнит с красивым видом Барселоны.

Kevin: No problem. I will bring you something nice.

Mary: By the way, where are you going to stay?

Kevin: The company has booked a room in the hotel for me. I don't know which hotel yet, but I know that it's a nice suite right in the city center.

Mary: Lucky you! I'm sure you'll have a great view from your window.

Kevin: I hope so.

Mary: Oh well. All I have to say is have a good trip and take care of yourself.

Kevin: Thank you, Mary.

Mary: Ah, nearly forgot. Please, be careful with your luggage and don't leave your things unattended. There are plenty of thieves at the airport, at the hotel and other crowded places.

Kevin. All right. I will be careful.

Кевин: Без проблем. Я привезу тебе что-нибудь хорошее.

Мэри: Кстати, а где ты намерен остановиться?

Кевин: Компания забронировала для меня комнату в отеле. Пока не знаю какой отель, но мне известно, что это красивые апартаменты прямо в центре города.

Мэри: Повезло тебе! Я уверена, что из твоего окна будет великолепный вид.

Кевин: Я надеюсь.

Мэри: Ну ладно. Мне остается только пожелать тебе хорошей поездки, и береги себя.

Кевин: Спасибо, Мэри.

Мэри: Ах, чуть не забыла. Пожалуйста, будь осторожен со своим багажом и не оставляй вещи без присмотра. В аэропорте, в отеле и в других людных местах полно воришек.

Кевин: Хорошо. Буду осторожен.

4. DIALOGUE

Meeting a friend (Встреча с другом)

По-английски

Peter: Hi, Jean! I haven't seen you for ages! How have you been?

Jean: Hi, Peter! I'm glad to see you! I've been to Chicago for the last two weeks.

Peter: Ah, I see. So that's the reason we haven't met for a long time.

Перевод на русский

Питэр: Привет, Джин! Не видел тебя сто лет! Как ты поживаешь?

Джин: Привет, Питэр! Рада тебя видеть! Последние две недели я была в Чикаго.

Питэр: А, понятно. Так вот почему мы давно не виделись.

Jean: Yes, it is so. And everything is fine with me. I've been just looking for a proper job. Anyway that wasn't a good idea. And how are things with you? Has anything new happened while I was away?

Джин: Да, поэтому. И со мной все в порядке. Я просто искала нормальную работу. В любом случае, это была неудачная затея. А как у тебя дела? Случилось ли что-нибудь новенькое в мое отсутствие?

Peter: I see. It's always worth trying, Jean. I'm sure you'll find a suitable occupation for yourself very soon. In fact, one of my old friends is running a clothing company in Chicago and they often need good managers there. I can give you his phone number if you want.

Питэр: Ясно. Все равно хорошо, что ты попыталась, Джин. Я уверен, что ты очень скоро найдешь подходящее для себя занятие. Кстати, один из моих старых приятелей руководит компанией одежды в Чикаго, и им там часто требуются хорошие менеджеры. Могу дать тебе номер его телефона, если хочешь.

Jean: Yes, sure. That would be great!

Джин: Да, конечно. Это будет здорово!

Peter: As for me, I'm doing well. Nothing new really happened here. Except, Marta and Richard decided to get married next month.

Питэр: А у меня все в порядке. Ничего особо нового не произошло. Разве что, Марта с Ричардом решили пожениться в следующем месяце.

Jean: Oh, wow! That's something! I'm really happy for them.

Джин: О, надо же! Это уже кое-что! Я так рада за них.

Peter: Yes, that was unexpected. We all thought that this couple won't last. And now, just imagine they are getting married.

Питэр: Да, это было неожиданно. Мы все думали, что эта парочка долго не протянет. А теперь, представь себе, они собрались пожениться.

Jean: Any other news that I've missed?

Джин: Есть какие-нибудь еще новости, которые я пропустила?

Peter: Not that important but Leslie has refused to be Hugo's girlfriend. We were all greatly surprised, as we thought that she actually liked him.

Питэр: Ничего особо важного, но Лэсли не захотела быть девушкой Хьюго. Мы все были очень удивлены, потому что думали, что он ей в принципе нравится.

Jean: Oh, dear! That's weird. She was so happy to see him, always accepted his presents, wanted his attention, and now she doesn't

Джин: О, Боже! Это так странно. Она была так рада видеть его, всегда принимала его подарки, хотела его внимания, а теперь сама же не хочет

want to be his girlfriend. I wonder why is that? быть его девушкой. Интересно, с чего бы это?

Peter: I think, something is rotten in the state of Denmark. Leslie is not that type of a girl. She is usually quite frank. I think he somehow hurt her. Питэр: Думаю, что-то тут нечисто. Лэсли не из так девушек. Она обычно довольно откровенна. Я думаю, он ее чем-то обидел.

Jean: I agree. I don't think that's only her fault. We should find out what happened when we meet her. Джин: Согласна. Я не думаю, что это только ее вина. Надо обязательно разузнать, что произошло, когда увидимся с ней.

Peter: Yeah, we should. In fact, there is something else that you have missed while you were in Chicago. Питэр: Да, надо. Кстати, есть еще кое-что, что ты упустила, пока была в Чикаго.

Jean: What's that? Джин: И что же это?

Peter: We found who stole Caroline's camera. Питэр: Мы нашли того, кто украл камеру Каролины.

Jean: Really? And who was it? Джин: Правда? И кто же это был?

Peter: It was her new flatmate, the young fellow who has just moved in. Питэр: Это был ее новый сосед, молодой парень, который только что подселился.

Jean: No way! He looks so innocent. I thought he can't say a boo to a goose. Джин: Не может быть! Он выглядит таким невинным. Я думала, он и мухи не обидит.

Peter: You see, appearance is deceptive. Питэр: Видишь ли, внешность бывает обманчива.

Jean: So, how it all happened? Джин: Так, как это все произошло?

Peter: At first, he saw us taking pictures and making a film outside. And I guess he already knew that it's quite an expensive camera. Then, he turned the emergency alarm on to scare us. When we panicked and ran, he stole it. Питэр: Сначала, он увидел, как мы на улице фотографируем и записываем видео. Я думаю, он уже знал, что это довольно дорогая камера. Затем, он включил аварийную сигнализацию, чтобы напугать нас. Когда мы запаниковали и разбежались, он украл ее.

Jean: He seems to be very smart. We should be careful with him. So did he give the camera back to the owner?
Джин: Оказывается он очень умен. Нам следует быть осторожнее с ним. Так он вернул камеру владелице?

Peter: No, he continues pretending but Caroline knows that it was him. She saw him taking pictures with it in the central park a few days ago. When she came closer, he hid it and quickly went away.
Питэр: Нет, он продолжает притворяться, но Каролина знает, что это был он. Она видела, как несколько дней тому назад он фотографировал ее в центральном парке. И когда она подошла поближе, он ее быстренько спрятал и удалился.

Jean: So, what is she going to do then? I know it cost her a fortune to buy this new technology.
Джин: И что же тогда она будет делать? Я знаю, что ей эта новая техника обошлась в кругленькую сумму.

Peter: Don't worry, we've invented an effective plan to make him confess and give back the camera.
Питэр: Не беспокойся, мы придумали действенный план, чтобы заставить его признаться и вернуть камеру.

Jean: Oh, that's a relief! I'm with you if you need me. Just tell me what to do.
Джин: О, это утешает! Я с вами если понадобится. Просто скажите, что делать.

Peter: Ok, we will. We should be going now. Caroline is waiting for us.
Питэр: Да, так и сделаем. А сейчас нам нужно идти. Каролина ждет нас.

5. DIALOGUE

Nice to meet you! (Приятно познакомиться!)

Martin: Hello, my name is Martin Lngel.
Мартин: Привет, меня зовут Мартин Тигель. Наша комната рядом с Вашей.

Michael: Our room is next to your room.
Михаэль: Правда? Меня зовут Михаэль Ленц. А это Мари Динсмор.

Martin: Oh really? My name is Michael Lentz. And this is Marie Dinsmore.
Мартин: Приятно с вами познакомиться.

Martin: Nice to meet you.
Мари: Приятно познакомиться. Вы

Marie: Nice to meet you. You can call me	можете называть меня Мари.
Martin: And I am Martin.	Мартин: А я Мартин.
Michael: I am Mike. How are you?	Михаэль: Я — Майк. Как дела?
Martin: Quite well. How are you?	Мартин: Все хорошо. Как ваши дела?
Mike: Just fine. It's such a lovely day. Do you have plans?	Майк: Неплохо. Такой прекрасный день. У вас есть какие-нибудь планы?
Martin: Yes, my wife and I plan to visit S. Paul's Cathedral.	Мартин: Да, мы с женой планируем посетить собор Святого Павла.
Mike: That's a great idea.	Майк: Отличная идея.
Martin: Here comes my wife. Gisela, this is Mike Lentz. And this is Mari Dinsmore. Marie, Mike, this is Gisela.	Мартин: Вот идет моя жена. Гизела, это Майк Ленц. А это Мари Динсмор. Мари, Майк, это Гизела.
Mike: Nice to meet you, Gisela.	Майк: Приятно познакомиться с Вами, Гизела.
Gisela: Nice to meet you, Mike. Hello Marie.	Гизела: Приятно познакомиться, Майк. Здравствуйте, Мари.
Marie: Hello, Gisela. Sorry, we have to go now. Have a good day!	Мари: Здравствуйте, Гизела. Извините, нам надо идти. Приятного Вам дня!

6. DIALOGUE

Where are you from? (Откуда вы?)

Marie: Where are you from?	Мари: Откуда Вы?
Martin: We come from a village near Munich, Germany.	Мартин: Мы приехали из Германии, из села недалеко от Мюнхена.
Mike: So, you live just outside the city?	Майк: Значит Вы живете за городом?
Martin: Our village is 40 minutes from Munich by train.	Мартин: Наше село в 40 минутах езды поездом от Мюнхена.

Mike: We are from Yorkshire. It's in the middle of the country.

Майк: Мы из Йоркшира. Это в центре страны.

Marie: We live in a small village, too. About 1000 people live there.

Мари: Мы тоже живем в маленьком селе. В нем около тысячи людей.

Gisela: Our village has only 800 inhabitants, but we love it. It is quiet, and we can see the Alps.

Гизела: В нашем селе лишь 800 жителей, но мы его любим. Оно тихое, и видны Альпы.

Martin: Are you here on holiday?

Мартин: Вы здесь в отпуске?

Mike: No, I'm here on business.

Майк: Нет, я здесь по делам.

Gisela: We're here for five days. And you?

Гизела: Мы пробудем здесь пять дней. А Вы?

Mike: We're here for a week. I have business to take care of, and then we are doing some sightseeing.

Майк: Мы здесь на неделю. Я должен закончить дела, а затем мы собираемся посмотреть город.

Martin: Perhaps we could have dinner together one night.

Мартин: Может, как-то вечером поужинаем вместе?

Mike: That would be nice.
Martin Enjoy London.

Майк: Это было бы неплохо.
Мартин: Приятных впечатлений от Лондона.

All: Goodbye!

Все: До свидания!

7. DIALOGUE

Making plans (Составление планов)

Marie: Hello, Gisela.

Мари: Привет, Гизела.

Gisela: Hello, Marie. We should have dinner together. Are you and Mike free tonight?

Гизела: Привет, Мари. Мы могли бы поужинать вместе. Вы с Майком свободны сегодня вечером?

Marie: No, we have plans already. We're having dinner with several of Mike's colleagues. They won a new customer.

Gisela: Well, congratulations.

Marie: Thank you. He is very happy about it.

Gisela: What about tomorrow night? Do you have dinner plans?

Marie: No. Tomorrow night is free.

Gisela: What time would be good for you?

Marie: I think 7 pm should be fine.

Gisela: Where should we go? Do you know any restaurants around here?

Marie: There's an excellent Japanese restaurant not far from here. Do you like Japanese?

Gisela: Yes, as long as it isn't too hot.

Marie: You can tell the waiter how hot you want it.

Marie: Perfect!

Мари: Нет, у нас уже есть планы. Мы будем ужинать с коллегами Майка. Они получили новый заказ.

Гизела: А, поздравляю.

Мари: Спасибо. Он очень рад.

Гизела: А завтра вечером? У Вас есть какие-то планы на ужин?

Мари: Нет. Завтрашний вечер свободен.

Гизела: Во сколько было бы для Вас удобно?

Мари: Думаю, что в семь вечера было бы неплохо.

Гизела: Куда мы можем пойти? Вы знаете рестораны поблизости?

Мари: Недалеко отсюда есть отличный японский ресторан. Вам нравится японская кухня?

Гизела: Да, если только еда не слишком острая.

Мари: Можете сказать официанту, насколько острое блюдо Вы хотите.

Гизела: Отлично!

8. DIALOGUE

Making a dinner reservation (Заказ ужина)

Administrator: I load Star of India, good evening.

Администратор: «Звезда Индии». Добрый вечер.

Martin: Hello, I would like to make a reservation for tomorrow night.

Мартин: Здравствуйте, я хотел бы заказать столик на завтрашний

Administrator: What time?	вечер. Администратор: На который час?
Martin: At 7.30.	Мартин: На семь тридцать.
Administrator: We don't have any tables available at 7.30. How about eight o'clock? We have one table at eight.	Администратор: На 7.30 у нас нет ни одного свободного столика. А если на восемь? У нас есть один столик на восемь.
Martin: That's fine.	Мартин: Хорошо.
Administrator: For how many people?	Администратор: На сколько персон?
Martin: Two.	Мартин: На двоих.
Administrator: May I have your name, please?	Администратор: Не могли бы Вы сказать свою фамилию?
Martin: It's Ingel, Martin Engel. That's e n (j e I.	Мартин: Энгель, Мартин Энгель. То есть Э-н-г-е-ль.
Administrator: Okey, Mr Engel. We have a table for two reserved for you at eight tomorrow night,	Администратор: Хорошо, господин Энгель. Столик на двоих заказан для вас на восемь на завтрашний вечер.
Martin: What is the underground station closed to your restaurant?	Мартин: Какая станция метро к вашему ресторану ближе всего?
Administrator: Marble Arch — on the Central Line. You can see us once you're at street level.	Администратор: Марбл Арч на линии Централ. Вы увидите нас, как только выйдете из метро на улицу.
Martin: Great. Thank you very mach.	Мартин: Хорошо. Благодарю вас.
Administrator: We will see you tomorrow night, then. Goodbye.	Администратор: Рады будем видеть Вас завтра вечером. До свидания.

9. DIALOGUE

Paying and complaining (Оплата и жалобы на обслуживание)

Martin: Excuse me!

Мартин: Простите!

Waitress: I'll be right with you. What can I do for you?

Официантка: Сейчас подойду. Чем могу помочь?

Martin: This isn't what I ordered. I ordered chicken curry, but this is pork.

Марти : Это не то, что я заказывал. Я заказал куриное карри, а это свиное.

Waitress: Okay. I'm sorry. I'll get you the correct meal as soon as possible.

Официантка: Да. Извините. Я принесу Вам нужное блюдо как можно скорее.

Martin: Excuse me!

Мартин: Простите!

Waitress: Yes! Can I get you something else to drink?

Официантка: Да! Принести вам еще что-нибудь выпить?

Martin: No, we'd like the bill, please.

Мартин: Нет, мы бы хотели счет, пожалуйста.

Waitress: Okay. I'll be right back with it....Here It is.

Официантка: Хорошо. Сейчас же принесу... Вот, пожалуйста.

Martin: On the bill it says «Pork Curry». I had a chicken curry. Is there a price difference?

Мартин: В счете указано свиное карри. Я заказывал куриное. Есть ли разница в цене?

Waitress: Yes, there is. I'm sorry about that. The chicken curry is one pound less. Let me fix that Okay, here it is. £28, please.

Официантки: Да, есть. Я прошу прощения. Куриное карри на фунт дешевле. Разрешите, я исправлю. Вот. Пожалуйста, 28 фунтов.

Martin: Here you go.

Мартин: Вот, возьмите.

Waitress: Thank you. Have a nice evening.

Официантка: Благодарю Вас. Приятного вечера.

10. DIALOGUE

“Travelling information (Справка на вокзале)

Martin: Excuse me, do you have a schedule for trains going to London?

Мартин: Простите, у Вас есть расписание поездов до Лондона?

Attendant: No, but trains leave about every seven minutes.

Служащий: Нет, но поезда курсируют каждые семь минут.

Martin: How much do tickets cost?

Мартин: Сколько стоят билеты?

Attendant: It depends. A simple one-way ticket to London costs £3.80.... Once you're in central London, tickets have different prices. Normally, tickets are £2.... If you are staying more than two or three days, a carnet is the best deal. You can buy a carnet, which is a book often tickets, for £15.

Служащий: Смотря какие. Обычный билет до Лондона стоит 3 фунта и 80 пенсов. По городу цена билетов различная. Обычно 2 фунта. Если Вы останетесь более чем на два-три дня, то лучше всего взять билетную книжечку. Вы сможете купить книжечку с десятью билетами за 15 фунтов.

Martin: Do you have a map of the London Underground?

Мартин: У Вас есть план лондонского метро?

Attendant: No, but you can get one in London. Many maps of London also have a map of the Underground.

Служащий: Нет, но вы сможете купить его в Лондоне. Схема метро есть также на многих картах Лондона.

Martin: Where do we get the train to London?

Мартин: Где посадка на поезд до Лондона?

Attendant: Do you see that sign over there with the train and arrow? That sign will lead you directly to the platform where you can catch the train to London.

Служащий: Видите вон там табличку с поездом и стрелкой? Этот знак указывает на платформу, где можно сесть на поезд до Лондона.

11. DIALOGUE

Check-in at the airport (Регистрация в аэропорту)

Security Guard: Did you pack your bags yourself?

Охранник: Вы сами упаковывали свои чемоданы?

Martin: Yes, I did.

Мартин: Да.

Guard: Do you have any electronic equipment in your baggage? Do you have a computer, for example?

Martin: No, I don't have a computer. I have an electric razor, a hair dryer and a mobilephone, but nothing else.

Guard: Thank you. Please wait for the next available ticket agent.

Ticket Agent: Your tickets please.

Martin: Here you are.

Agent: How many bags are you checking in today?

Martin: two.

Agent: A window seat and an aisle seat or seats in the centre?

Martin: A window and an aisle seat, please.

Agent: Here are your boarding passes. Your bags, are checked through to Munich.... Your plane leaves from Gate 41 B at 11.15 am. Boarding starts half an hour before. Have a nice flight.

Охранник: Имеются ли у Вас в багаже какие-либо электронные устройства? Например, компьютер?

Мартин: Нет, у меня нет компьютера. У меня есть электробритва, фен и мобильный телефон, и больше ничего.

Охранник: Благодарю Вас. Пожалуйста, подождите контролера.

Контролер: Пожалуйста, Ваши билеты.

Мартин: Прошу.

Контролер. Сколько чемоданов вы сегодня регистрируете?

Мартин: Два.

Контролер: Места у окна и возле прохода или места в центре?

Мартин: У окна и возле прохода, пожалуйста.

Контролер: Вот ваши посадочные талоны. Ваши чемоданы зарегистрированы до Мюнхена. Самолет улетает от терминала 41В в 11.15. Посадка начинается за полчаса. Приятного полета.

12. DIALOGUE

Asking for directions (Как пройти)

Martin: Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the Tower of London?

British Man: It's very simple, really. You're here in Piccadilly Circus.

Мартин: Извините, Вы не подскажете, как добраться до Тауэра?

Британец: Это очень просто. Сейчас вы находитесь на Пикадили Сиркус.

Got on the Bakerloo line, towards Elephant & Castle.... At Embankment, get off and switch onto the Central line, or the District line towards Upminster. Your stop is called lower Hill.

Едете дальше по линии Бейкерло до Элефант и Кастл... на Имбенкмент выходите и пересеживаетесь на линию Централ или на Дистрикт в направлении Апминстера. Ваша остановка называется Тауэр Хилл.

Martin: Thank you very much.

Мартин: Большое спасибо.

Man: Not at all.

Британец: Не стоит.

Gisela: Excuse me, we seem to be lost. We're looking for St. Paul's Cathedral.

Гизела: Простите, кажется, мы заблудились. Мы ищем собор Святого Павла.

British Woman: Yes, you are a bit lost. Okay, down there is Gresham Street. Take a right onto Gresham Street and walk up till you see Foster Lane on your left.... Take a left onto Foster Lane, At the end of Foster Lane, you'll be just across the road from St. Paul's.

Британка: Да, Вы немного сбились с пути. Так вот, дальше вниз улица Грешам. Сверните направо на улицу Грешам и идите, пока слева не увидите Фостер Лейн. Поворачиваете налево на Фостер Лейн. И в конце Фостер Лейн вы окажетесь как раз напротив собора Святого Павла.

Gisela: It sounds easy. Thank you for your help

Гизела: Кажется, это легко. Спасибо за помощь.

British woman: You're welcome.

Британка: Пожалуйста.

13. DIALOGUE

Reserving a hotel room (Бронирование комнаты в гостинице)

Hotel Desk Clerk (on the phone):
Chester Hotel, how may I help you?

Администратор: Гостиница Честер, чем могу быть полезен?

Gisela: Hello. Do you have any rooms available March 21 to 24?

Гизела: Добрый день. Есть ли у вас номера, свободные с 21 по 24 марта?

Clerk: Yes, of course.

Администратор: Да, конечно.

Gisela: How much does a room for

Гизела: Сколько стоит номер на

two cost per night?	двоих на одну ночь?
Clerk: Do you want one or two beds?	Администратор: Вам нужна одна или две кровати?
Gisela: One bed.	Гизела: Одна кровать.
Clerk: Do you want a shower or bath?	Администратор: Вам нужен душ или ванна?
Gisela: A shower.	Гизела: Душ.
Clerk: A room costs £76 per night.	Администратор: Комната стоит 76 фунтов за ночь.
Gisela: That's a little expensive.	Гизела: Это дороговато.
Clerk: Perhaps, but we are within walking distance of Bayswater on the London Underground.... The price also includes breakfast as well as access to a sauna and fitness room.	Администратор: Возможно, ведь мы находимся за несколько шагов от Бейсуотер — станции лондонского метрополитена... К тому же в стоимость включен завтрак, а также пользование сауной и спортзалом.
Gisela. What do you need in order to reserve a room?	Гизела; Что нужно для того, чтобы забронировать комнату?
Clerk: We just need a name, a phone number and a credit card number.	Администратор: Нам нужно только ваше имя, номер телефона и номер кредитной карточки.

14. DIALOGUE

In a supermarket (В супермаркете)

Gisela: We need to get some bread.	Гизела: Нам надо купить хлеба.
Marie: Yes, to make lunches.	Мари: Да, на обед.
Gisela: A friend of mine said she wanted me to get a jar of orange marmalade while we're here.	Гизела: Моя подруга попросила, раз мы здесь, чтобы я взяла баночку апельсинового варенья.
Marie: You should find something for her here. Mustard is in this aisle.	Мари: Вы, наверное, что-то для нее подберете. Горчица в этом отделе.

Gisela: And mayonnaise too.

Мари: И майонез тоже.

Marie: This aisle has bread and ...

Мари: В этом отделе хлеб и...

Gisela: ... chocolate. We just need something to put in the sandwiches. Excuse me, could you tell me where the lunch meat is?

Гизела: ...шоколад. Нам надо еще взять что-то к сандвичам. Извините, Вы не могли бы подсказать, где находятся мясные продукты?

Assistant: It's in aisle two.

Продавец: Во втором ряду.

Gisela: Thanks. Oh, here's something already sliced.

Мари: Спасибо. Здесь уже нарезанные продукты.

Marie: And the package reseals. Let's get in the queue.

Мари: И многоразовая упаковка. Давай станем в очередь.

Cashier: That comes to £11.40.

Кассир: Это стоит 11 фунтов и 40 пенсов.

Gisela: Here's twenty.

Гизела: Вот 20.

Cashier: 60 pence makes 12 and 3 pounds and 5 make 20.

Кассир: С 60 пенсами — будет 12,3 фунта и еще 5 — будет 20.

Gisela: Thank you very much.

Гизела: Большое спасибо.

Cashier: You're welcome. Goodbye.

Продавец: Пожалуйста. До свидания.

Gisela: Goodbye.

Гизела: До свидания.

15. DIALOGUE

Exchanging money (Обмен денег)

Martin: Good afternoon. I'd like to exchange some money.

Мартин: Добрый день. Я хотел бы обменять деньги.

Clerc: Cash or traveller's checks?

Служащий банка: Наличные или дорожные чеки?

Martin: Cash. I have Euros in cash.	Мартин: Наличные. У меня евро наличными.
Clerc: And how much money do you want to exchange?	Служащий: И сколько денег Вы хотите обменять?
Martin: 200 Euros.	Мартин: 200 евро.
Clerc: The exchange rate today is point six eight seven pounds per Euro.	Служащий: Курс обмена сегодня составляет 0,687 фунта за евро.
Martin: In there any fee?	Мартин: Сюда входит комиссия?
Clerc: No, there is a commission only on traveller's checks, from banks not affiliated with ours.	Служащий: Комиссионные берут только с дорожных чеков других банков.
Martin: Okay.	Мартин: Хорошо.
Clerc: With the exchange rate that comes to £137.40. Is that okay?	Служащий: По этому обменному курсу получается 137.40 фунтов. Вам подходит?
Martin: Yes, thank you.	Мартен: Да, спасибо.
Clerc: I just need you to sign this.	Служащий: Вы должны здесь подписать.
Martin: Okay.	Мартин: Хорошо.
Clerc: How would you like it?	Служащий: Какими Вам купюрами?
Martin: In twenties and smaller notes.	Мартин: Двадцатками и меньшими.
Okay. 20,40,60,80,100,20,30,35, 6,7 and 40 pence.	Служащий: Хорошо. 20,40,60,80,100,20,30,35,6,7 и 40 пенсов.

16. DIALOGUE

Withdrawing and transferring money (Снятие и перевод денег)

Giseia: Good morning.

Гизела: Доброе утро.

Bank Clerk. Good morning. What can I do for you today?

Служащий банка: Доброе утро. Чем могу помочь?

Giseia: My bank card won't work, and I would like to withdraw £200.

Гизела: Моя банковская карточка не действует, а я хотела бы снять 200 фунтов.

Clerk: May I see your card and some form of picture identification?

Служащий: Могу я взглянуть на Вашу карточку и документ, удостоверяющий личность?

Giseia: Here's my German passport and here's the card.

Гизела: Вот мой германский паспорт и карточка.

Clerk: I see the problem. Your card has expired.

Служащий: Дело в том, что срок действия вашей карточки закончился.

Giseia: My husband must have the new one.

Гизела: У моего мужа должна быть новая.

Clerk: It's no problem. I just need you to fill in this form, and we can give you your money.

Служащий: Никаких проблем. Вам необходимо только заполнить бланк, и мы сможем выдать деньги.

Giseia: Here you are.

Гизела; Вот, пожалуйста.

Clerk: £200. How would you like your money?

Служащий: 200 фунтов. Какими купюрами Вы бы хотели?

Giseia: Three fifties, two twenties and a ten.

Гизела: Три по пятьдесят, две двадцатки и десятку.

Clerk: Okay,
50,50,100,50,20,20,10,200 £.

Служащий: Хорошо.
50,50,100,50,20,20,10,200 фунтов.

17. DIALOGUE

Posting letters and parcels (Отправление писем и посылок)

Gisela: Hello, I would like to post these postcards and parcels.

Гизела: Добрый день, я хочу отослать эти открытки и посылки.

Clerc: The postcards are all to Germany. Airmail right?

Служащий почты: Все открытки в Германию. Авиапочтой?

Gisela: Yes, please.

Гизела: Да, пожалуйста.

Clerc: Okay, six postcards at 40 pence per card. And now the parcels.

Служащий: Хорошо, шесть открыток по 40 пенсов за каждую. А теперь посылки.

Gisela: Yes, one goes to the United States and the other to Germany.

Гизела: Одна в США, другая в Германию.

Clerc: I need you to fill in these two contents and the value of each parcel.... Do you want them insured?

Служащий: Для этих двух посылок вы должны заполнить таможенную декларацию. Укажите, пожалуйста, содержимое и ценность посылок. Хотите застраховать?

Gisela: No, thank you.

Гизела: Нет, благодарю.

Clerc: Do you want to post them surface or airmail?

Служащий: Хотите послать морским транспортом или авиапочтой?

Gisela: What is the price difference?

Гизела: Большая ли разница в цене?

Clerc: Surface costs less than half the price of airmail. But the parcel to the US will take at least two weeks to arrive.... By airmail it will be four or five days.

Служащий: Морским транспортом стоит более чем наполовину дешевле, чем самолетом. Но посылка в США будет идти две недели. Авиапочтой это займет четыре или пять дней.

Gisela: I had better send them airmail.

Гизела: Я лучше pošлю авиапочтой.

18. DIALOGUE
At an exhibition (На выставке)

Marie: I've only seen reproductions of Van Gogh's paintings.

Мари: Раньше я видела лишь репродукции картин Ван Гога.

Martin: How you can see the real ones here.

Мартин: Сейчас Вы можете увидеть оригиналы.

Gisela: There's such a long queue to get into the exhibition.

Гизела. На выставку такая большая очередь.

Mike: Yes. I'm surprised how many people are here to see his paintings.

Майк: Да. Я удивлен, что так много людей хотят посмотреть его картины.

Gisela: I like his portraits.

Гизела: Мне нравятся его портреты.

Marie: And you Mike?

Мари: А тебе, Майк?

Mike: I like his night scenes.

Майк: Мне нравятся его ночные пейзажи.

Martin: Yes, I like the «Starry, Starry Night.»

Мартин: Да, мне нравится «Звездная, звездная ночь».

Mike: And the night cafe scenes.

Майк: И сюжет с ночным кафе.

Martin: Four adults for the Van Gogh exhibition.

Мартин: Четыре для взрослых на выставку Ван Гога.

Ticket Agent: That's £40.

Кассир: Это стоит 40 фунтов.

Mike: Let's leave our jackets in the cloakroom.

Майк: Давайте сдадим куртки в гардероб.

Martin: And I'll put my camera in a locker. I can't take pictures in here anyway.

Мартин: Я оставлю свой фотоаппарат в камере хранения. Все равно я не смогу здесь фотографировать.

Gisela I hope the guide speaks slowly.

Гизела: Надеюсь, экскурсовод будет говорить медленно.

19. DIALOGUE

Sightseeing around london (Экскурсия по лондону и его окрестностям)

Mike: Martin, you have to see St. James's Church, Piccadilly, while you're here in London.

Martin: Why?

Mike: It's beautiful, and the famous architect Sir Christopher Wren designed it.

Martin: His name is familiar.

Gisela: I would like to see The Globe.

Marie: It's really a nice replica of where Shakespeare's plays were performed.

Gisela: Martin wants to go the Imperial War Museum.

Marie: Or there's the British Museum.

Mike: And you can visit Madame Tussaud's.

Martin: What about some place outside of London?

Mike: You could go to Stonehenge. The stones are much bigger than you might expect.

Marie: Or you could go to Brighton. There's a nice beach.

Майк: Мартин, Вам стоит посмотреть церковь св. Якова на Пиккадилли, если вы здесь, в Лондоне.

Мартин: Почему?

Майк: Она очень красивая, и проектировал ее выдающийся архитектор сэра Кристофер Рен.

Мартин: Его имя очень известно.

Гизела: Я хочу увидеть «Глобус».

Мари: Это действительно хорошая реконструкция театра, в котором ставили пьесы Шекспира. Мартин хочет пойти в музей Первой мировой войны.

Мари: Есть еще Британский национальный музей.

Майк: И Вы можете посетить Музей восковых фигур мадам Тюссо.

Мартин: А что вы скажете о поездке за город?

Майк: Вы можете поехать в Стоунхендж. Каменные глыбы значительно больше, чем можно было бы ожидать.

Мари: Или можете поехать в Брайтон. Там отличный пляж.

20. DIALOGUE

At the beach (На пляже)

Glseia: It was a great idea to come here.

Гизела: Это была великолепная идея — приехать сюда

Mike: I thought you might like to get out of London. London is nice, but there is more to England.

Майк: Я думал, вы с удовольствием выбрали за Лондон. Лондон красив, но в Англии красив мест еще больше.

Martin: This is not sand. I thought you had sand on the beach.

Мартин: Нет песка. Я думал, у вас песок на пляжах.

Mike: Our beaches are usually rocky. Shall we go in?

Майк: Обычно наши пляжи каменистые. Идем?

Martin: The water is cold.

Мартин: Вода холодная.

Mike: Only until you get used to it.

Майк: Пока не привыкнешь.

Martin: See you in a bit, ladies.

Мартин: Вскоре увидимся, дамы.

Mike: Look at the sailing boats out there.

Майк: Посмотрите туда, на парусники.

Martin: The wind looks strong.

Мартин: Кажется, ветер усиливается.

Marie: Do you need more suntan lotion?

Мари: Вам еще нужен крем для загара?

Gisela: No, thank you. I don't normally get sunburns.

Гизела: Нет, благодарю. Обычно, загар ко мне не цепляется.

Marie: I do. But if I put any more suntan lotion on, I'll slide of the chair.

Мари: А я намажусь. Но, если я еще возьму хоть немножко крема, то соскользну со стула.

Gisela: Shall we get an ice cream while Martin and Mike are gone?

Гизела: Возьмем себе мороженого, пока нет Мартина и Майка?

Marie: The shade will be nice.

Мари: Не плохо было бы укрыться в тени.

21. DIALOGUE
At the pharmacy (B аптеке)

Martin: I would like to redeem a prescription.

Pharmacist: May I see it, please?

Martin: Yes, of course. Here it is.

Pharmacist: I'll be back in a moment.

Pharmacist: Are you taking any other medication at the moment?

Martin: Only my asthma medicine

Pharmacist: If you want to use this medicine, you're going to have to stop taking the other one.

Martin: Okay.

Pharmacist: This asthma medicine is rather strong. There may be side-effects at first. ... It can cause vomiting and skin rashes. Usually it doesn't, but it can.

Martin: How often should I take it?

Pharmacist: You take it only once a day, and you take it right before you eat breakfast.... I'm afraid, you should avoid beer or alcohol while taking this medication.

Martin: Hmmm, Anything else?

Pharmacist: Here's your prescription back, and here's your receipt.

22. DIALOGUE

At the constabulary's office (В полицейском участке)

Bobby: What can I do for you?

Бобби: Чем могу помочь?

Martin: I would like to report something. My wife's handbag was stolen.

Мартин: Я хотел бы сделать заявление. У моей жены украли сумочку.

Bobby: When?

Бобби: Когда?

Gisela: About 20 minutes ago.

Гизела: Приблизительно 20 минут назад.

Bobby: Where?

Бобби: Где?

Martin: In Hyde Park.

Мартин: В Гайд-парке.

Bobby: Did you see who did it?

Бобби: Вы видели, кто это сделал?

Martin: I don't know. We were sitting on a bench: I sat on one side and she set her handbag on the other side.... She looked away for just one moment and it was gone.

Мартин: Нет. Мы сидели на скамейке: я с одной стороны, а свою сумочку она положила с другой. Она на какое-то мгновение отвела взгляд, и сумка исчезла.

Bobby: Thieves are very, very quick. So, you didn't see who took it?

Бобби: Воры действуют очень, очень быстро. Итак, Вы не видели, кто ее взял?

Gisela: We think it was two young men, probably 17 years old.

Гизела: Мы думаем, это были двое молодых людей, приблизительно 17-летнего возраста.

Bobby: We need you to fill in this form. Give us your address here and at home... Describe the handbag: brand name, colour, size.... Cancel your credit cards immediately. Notify your bank too.

Бобби: Необходимо, чтобы Вы заполнили этот формуляр. Запишите свои местный и домашний адрес... Опишите сумочку: какой фирмы, цвет, размер.... Немедленно аннулируйте свои кредитные карточки. Сообщите также в свой банк.

23. DIALOGUE

In the emergency room (В кабинете скорой помощи)

Gisela: It's his ankle and wrist. He was walking down a hill in the rain and fell down.

Гизела: Его лодыжка и запястье. Он в дождь спускался вниз и упал.

Doctor: Your feet slipped out from under you?

Врач: Вы поскользнулись?

Martin: Yes. I couldn't stop my fall.

Мартин: Да, я не смог удержаться на ногах.

Doctor: You tried to stop your fall and hurt wrist, Mr...?

Врач: Вы пытались удержаться и ушибли запястье, господин...?

Martin: Engel.

Мартин: Енгель.

Doctor: Are you in a lot of pain?

Врач: Сильно болит?

Martin: It's not too bad at the moment.

Мартин: Сейчас не очень.

Doctor: Mr Engel, I'm going to press around your ankle.... It's so swollen that I can't tell if anything is broken or not. ... Can you move your wrist and fingers? ... The wrist is definitely sprained. I can't be certain about your ankle though.

Врач: Господин Енгель, я ошупаю вашу лодыжку... Она так распухла, что я не могу сказать, поломано ли что-то или нет... Можете двигать запястьем и пальцами?... В запястье растянуты связки. Однако не могу точно определить, что с вашей лодыжкой.

Martin: It's like a balloon.

Мартин: Она, как шар.

Doctor: I'm afraid so. I think we better x-ray your ankle.

Врач. Меня это также беспокоит. Думаю, нам лучше сделать рентген вашей лодыжки.

24. DIALOGUE

Seeing a doctor (Визит к врачу)

Doctor: What can I do for you?

Врач: Чем могу помочь?

Martin: I have asthma, and I'm having difficulty breathing

Мартин: У меня астма, и мне тяжело дышать.

Doctor: Do you have any unusual symptoms, any allergies?

Врач: Какие-то необычные симптомы, аллергия?

Martin: I don't think so.

Мартин: Наверное, нет.

Doctor: Are you taking any medication at the moment?

Врач: Принимаете сейчас какие-нибудь лекарства?

Martin: Just my usual asthma medication.

Мартин: Только свое обычное лекарство от астмы.

Doctor: But it isn't working?

Врач: Но оно не действует?

Martin: Not the way it usually does.

Мартин: Не так, как обычно.

Doctor: Please take off your shirt. I want to listen to your lungs.... Okay, breathe in deeply. Now breathe out. Breathe in again. Hold it. Now breathe out.... Everything seems normal. I can hear that you're having a little difficulty breathing, but I can't hear anything in your lungs.

Врач: Пожалуйста, снимите рубашку. Я хочу послушать ваши легкие. Хорошо, глубоко вдохните. Теперь выдохните. Вдохните опять. Задержите дыхание. Теперь выдохните.... Кажется, все в норме. Я слышу, что у вас затруднено дыхание, но не могу ничего услышать в легких.

Martin: There's nothing you can do?

Мартин: Вы ничего не можете сделать?

Doctor: I'll prescribe a different asthma medicine. We'll see if that works. If it doesn't, come back.

Врач: Я выпишу другое лекарство от астмы. Посмотрим, подействует ли оно. Если нет — приходите еще.

1. ARTICLE

Compare **a** and **the** in these examples:

1. A man and a woman were sitting opposite me. The man was American but I think the woman was British.
2. When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel. Sometimes we had our evening meal at the hotel and sometimes we went to a restaurant.

We use the when we are thinking of one particular thing. Compare a/an and the:

1. Tom sat down on a chair. (perhaps one of many chairs in the room)
but Tom sat down on the chair nearest the door. (a particular chair)
2. Ann is looking for a job. (not a particular job)
but Did Ann get the job she applied for? (a particular job)
3. Have you got a car? (not a particular car)
but I cleaned the car yesterday. (= my car)

We use the when it is clear in the situation which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about 'the light/the floor/the ceiling/the door/the carpet' etc.:

1. Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)
2. I took a taxi to the station. (= the station in that town)
3. I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop etc.)

In the same way, we say (go to) the bank, the post office:

1. I must go to the bank to get some money and then I'm going to the post office to get some stamps. (The speaker is usually thinking of a particular bank or post office.)

Also: the doctor, the dentist:

1. Carol isn't very well. She's gone to the doctor. (= her usual doctor)
2. I hate going to the dentist.

A. We use the ... when there is only one of something:

1. What is the longest river in the world? (there is only one longest river)
2. The earth goes round the sun and the moon goes round the earth.
3. I'm going away at the end of this month.

Don't forget the:

1. Paris is the capital of France. (not 'Paris is capital of...')

But we use a/an to say what kind of thing something is (see Unit 70C). Compare the and a:

1. The sun is a star. (= one of many stars)
2. The hotel we stayed at was a very nice hotel.

We say: the sky the sea the ground the country the environment:

1. We looked up at all the stars in the sky. (not 'in sky')

2. Would you rather live in a town or in the country?
3. We must do more to protect the environment. (= the natural world around us)

Note that we say space (without 'the') when we mean 'space in the universe':

1. There are millions of stars in space. (not 'in the space')
but * I tried to park my car but the space was too small.

We use the before same (the same):

1. Your pullover is the same colour as mine. (not 'is same colour')
2. These two photographs are the same. (not 'are same')

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Underline the correct word.

1. I don't like that coat. The/ A colour is horrible.
2. He doesn't like going to see the/ a dentist.
3. She asked for the/ a cup of coffee, but she got tea instead.
4. The/ A laboratory is a place where scientific experiments are done.
5. I don't believe he's the/ a policeman, he looks too young!
6. She is a/ an intelligent woman.
7. I went to the/ a bank today and they said I didn't have any money!
8. Who left the/ a door open?
9. A/ An hotel is more expensive than a/ an youth hostel.
10. The/ A film starts at half past seven.

Ex.2. Choose the correct form, A, B or C, to complete the sentence.

1. If you want to be healthier, think carefully about ___ you eat.
A. food B. the food C. a food
2. If you don't enjoy ___, do something else.
A. the exercise B. an exercise C. an exercise
3. Try learning ____.
A. a new sport B. new sport C. the new sport
4. Sometimes the food you eat is less important than ____.
A. food you don't eat B. a food you don't eat C. the food you don't eat
5. Do you eat enough ____?
A. fruit and vegetables B. the fruit and vegetables C. fruit and the vegetables?
6. There is a saying, ___ a day keeps the doctor away.'
A. The apple B. A apple C. An apple
7. ___ chocolate cake should only be eaten occasionally.
A. The piece of B. Piece of C. A piece of
8. Stress also makes ___ unhealthy.
A. the people B. people C. a people
9. If you've had ___, try and do something nice for yourself.

- A. the bad day B. bad day C. a bad day
 10. You could visit a friend or go to ____.
 A. cinema B. the cinema C. a cinema

Ex.3. Put in the or a where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. A: Our apartment is on the tenth floor.
 B: Is it? I hope there's a lift.
2. A: Did you have ____ nice holiday?
 B: Yes, it was ____ best holiday I've ever had.
3. A: Where's ____ nearest shop?
 B: There's one at ____ end of this street.
4. A: It's ____ lovely day, isn't it?
 B: Yes, there isn't ____ cloud in ____ sky.
5. A: I've got a problem with my computer. It isn't connecting to ____ internet.
 B: That's interesting. I've got ____ same problem with mine.
6. A: We spent all our money because we stayed at ____ most expensive hotel in town.
 B: Why didn't you stay at ____ cheaper hotel?
7. A: Would you like to travel in ____ space?
 B: Yes, I'd love to go to ____ moon.
8. A: What's Jupiter? Is it ____ star?
 B: No, it's ____ planet. It's ____ largest planet in ____ solar system.

Ex.4. Choose the correct variant.

1. ____ Smiths have a dog and a cat.
 a) ____ b) The c) A
2. He knows how to work on ____ computer.
 a) a b) an c) ____
3. She was the first woman to swim across ____ English Channel.
 a) a b) ____ c) the
4. Go down ____ Kingston Street and turn left into Oxford Street.
 a) the b) a c) ____
5. I don't like milk in ____ tea.
 a) ____ b) the c) a
6. At the end of ____ busy day, sleep is the best way to restore your energy.
 a) the b) a c) ____
7. We'll go for a walk if ____ weather is fine.
 a) a b) ____ c) the
8. Could you give me ____ information I asked for in my letter?
 a) the b) ____ c) a
9. ____ war is a terrible thing.
 a) The b) ____ c) A

10. I spent ___ very interesting holiday in England.

- a) the b) a c) ___

Ex.5. Fill in the correct article.

1. "Is this your ___ friend?" — "No, it isn't my ___ friend, it is my sister".
2. I have ___ sister. My ___ sister is ___ teacher. My sister's ___ husband is ___ pilot.
3. I have no ___ car.
4. She has got ___ terrible ___ headache.
5. They have ___ dog and two ___ cats.
6. My ___ cousin says he is going to be ___ manager one ___ day.
7. Would you like ___ apple?
8. This is ___ tree. ___ tree is green.
9. I can see three ___ children. ___ children are playing in ___ yard.
10. I have ___ car. ___ car is white. My ___ friend has no ___ car.

Ex.6. Fill in the articles in the proverbs if necessary.

1. ___ apple ___ day keeps ___ doctor away.
2. ___ appetite comes with eating.
3. ___ good beginning makes ___ good ending.
4. ___ bird in ___ hand is worth two in ___ bush.
5. Among ___ blind ___ one-eyed man is king.
6. ___ brevity is ___ soul of wit.
7. ___ cat has nine lives.
8. ___ charity begins at ___ home.
9. ___ clothes make ___ man.
10. ___ curiosity killed ___ cat.

Ex.7. Put in a/an or the.

1. This morning I bought a newspaper and ___ magazine. ___ newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put ___ magazine.
2. I saw ___ accident this morning. ___ car crashed into ___ tree. ___ driver of ___ car wasn't hurt, but ___ car was badly damaged.
3. There are two cars parked outside: ___ blue one and ___ grey one. ___ blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who ___ owner of ___ grey one is.
4. My friends live in ___ old house in ___ small village. There is ___ beautiful garden behind ___ house. I would like to have ___ garden like that.

Ex.8. Put in the where necessary. If you don't need the, leave the space empty.

1. I haven't been to the cinema for ages.
2. Sarah spends most of her free time watching ___ TV.
3. Do you ever listen to ___ radio?
4. ___ television was on, but nobody was watching it.
5. Have you had ___ dinner yet?
6. Lisa and I arrived at ___ same time.

7. What's _____ capital city of Canada?
8. What do you want for _____ breakfast?
9. I lay down on _____ ground and looked up at _____ sky.

Ex.9. Put in the or a where necessary.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. Sun is star. | <u>The sun is a star.</u> |
| 2. I'm fed up with doing same thing every day. | _____ . |
| 3. Room 25 is on second floor. | _____ . |
| 4. Moon goes round earth every 27 days. | _____ . |
| 5. It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year. | _____ . |
| 6. We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea. | _____ . |
| 7. What's on at cinema this week? | _____ . |
| 8. I like to eat good breakfast before I go to work. | _____ . |
| 9. We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform. . | _____ . |
| 10. Next train to London leaves from Platform 3. | _____ . |
| 11. You'll find information you need at top of page 15. | _____ . |

Ex.10. Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Everest was first climbed in 1953. | <u>OK</u> |
| 2. Milan is in north of Italy. | <u>in the north of Italy</u> |
| 3. Africa is much larger than Europe. | _____ |
| 4. Last year I visited Mexico and United States. | _____ |
| 5. South of England is warmer than north. | _____ |
| 6. Portugal is in western Europe. | _____ |
| 7. France and Britain are separated by Channel. | _____ |
| 8. James has travelled a lot in Middle East. | _____ |
| 9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan. | _____ |
| 10. Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps. | _____ |
| 11. UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. | _____ |
| 12. Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean. | _____ |
| 13. The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro. | _____ |
| 14. River Volga flows into Caspian Sea. | _____ |

2. AUXILIARY VERBS

Auxiliary (or Helping) verbs are used together with a main **verb** to show the verb's tense or to form a negative or question. The most common auxiliary verbs are have, be, and do.

Example

1. **Does** Sam write all his own reports?

2. The secretaries **haven't** written all the letters yet.
3. Terry **is** writing an e-mail to a client at the moment.

There are just three common auxiliary verbs:

Have

Do

Be

Have

“Have” is a very important verb that can stand alone in all its tenses, including **has, have, having, had, and hadn't or had not**. It is usually used to denote ownership, and it can also be used to discuss ability or describe appearance. “Have” is also a very popular substitute for the verbs “eat” and “drink.” For example: “Let's have dinner.”

Do

“Do” can be used as an action verb that stands alone in all its tenses, including **to do, do, does, done, did and didn't, doesn't or did not** .

When used as an auxiliary verb, **do** is always paired up with another verb to create a complete verb phrase. In some cases, it is used to add emphasis: “*I **did** put the garbage out!*” **Do** is often used to form questions and negated clauses.

For example: “*He plays piano well, **doesn't** he?*” or “They all had dinner, but I didn't.”

Be

“Be” or “to be” is an important verb that has a multitude of uses in English. It can be used as an action verb that stands alone in all its tenses including **be, to be, been, am, are, is, was, were, wasn't, was not aren't, are not, weren't and were not**.

When used as an auxiliary verb, **be** is always paired with another verb to create a complete verb phrase. It can be singular or plural, present or past. Negative sentences are formed by adding the word “not”.

Modal Auxiliary Verbs

In addition to the three main auxiliary verbs, **have, do, and be**, there are additional auxiliary verbs. These are called **modal auxiliary verbs**, and they never change form. A complete list of modal auxiliary verbs follows:

Can

Could

May

Might

Must

Ought to

Shall

Should

Will

Would

Auxiliary Verb Examples

Here are some examples of auxiliary verbs and verb phrases. In the examples below, the verb phrase is italicized and the auxiliary verb is in bold.

1. Jessica **is** taking John to the airport.
2. If he **doesn't** arrive on time, he'll have to take a later flight.
3. Unfortunately, our dinner **has been** eaten by the dog.
4. I **have** purchased a new pair of shoes to replace the ones that were lost in my luggage.
5. We hope you **don't** have an accident on your way to school.
6. She **was** baking a pie for dessert.
7. Dad **has been** working hard all day.
8. The bed **was** made as soon as I got up.
9. Sarah **doesn't** ski or roller skate.
10. **Did** Matthew bring coffee?

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete the sentences using the auxiliary verbs. Translate into Russian.

1. _____ you remember my friend Max?
2. We _____ return home soon.
3. He _____ be angry if he knew.
4. I told him _____ be going.
5. Our father _____ just written a new book.
6. She _____ done with algebra.
7. What _____ you going to be when you grow up?
8. He _____ given you a diamond ring.
9. They _____ not feel good.
10. We _____ have the tent up in no time.

Ex.2. Translate into Russian.

1) TO BE

1. Matter is constantly changing and is constantly moving.
2. The Curies had been working for four years before they discovered radium.
3. Energy is measured in the same units as work.

2) TO HAVE

1. He told her what had happened and left.
2. I will have read the story by 10 o'clock.
3. Have you ever been in Moscow?

3) TO DO

1. Why did you not come by the 9 o'clock train?
2. Don't go away!
3. Does he help you? — Yes, he does.

4) SHALL

1. I shall be tired after the lecture.
2. Shall he begin the experience?
3. You shall get all the necessary books tomorrow.

5) SHOULD

1. I said that I should return on Sunday.
2. If he should come, I shall speak to him about it.
3. You should have measured the difference in potential between the points X and Y.

6) WILL

1. We will help you if you wish.
2. All right, I will do it.
3. Will you let me have a look at that letter?

7) WOULD

1. She said that they would have taken all the exams by the 21st of June.
2. He said that he would return soon.
3. He thought that we would be working all day.

Ex.3. Choose the right variant.

1. I ___ waiting for Pete.
a) am b) have c) do d) will
2. He ___ finished his work by 7 o'clock.
a) is b) will c) should d) had
3. He ___ learn French.
a) hasn't b) wouldn't c) doesn't d) isn't
4. They ___ go there with pleasure.
a) have b) are c) will do
5. Mary and John ___ at home last Monday.
a) have b) do c) were will
6. He will ___ read the story by 10 o'clock.
a) does b) was c) have should
7. ___ open the window.
a) haven't b) don't c) won't isn't
8. The train ___ arrive at 7.20.
a) has b) is c) will should
9. ___ you ever been to the Caucasus?
a) are b) should c) have do
10. The train ___ have left by the time they get to the station.
a) is b) does c) will has

Ex.4. Make up sentences.

1. seem, he, unfriendly, does,?
2. I, the typist, came, the letters, when, typing, was.
3. just, the agreement, has, by, the director, been, signed.

4. his mother, returns, he, be, will, working, when.
5. go, did, to, cinema, you, the, yesterday,?
6. my, he, I, finished, before, had, work, returned.

Ex.5. Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (*do/was/could* etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (*don't/wasn't* etc.).

1. I wasn't tired, but my friends were.
2. I like hot weather, but Ann _____.
3. 'Is Andy here?' 'He _____ five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now.'
4. Liz said she might call me later this evening, but I don't think she _____.
5. 'Are you and Chris coming to the party?' 'I _____, but Chris _____.'
6. I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I _____?
7. 'Please don't tell anybody what I said.' 'Don't worry. I _____.'
8. 'You never listen to me.' 'Yes, I _____!'
9. I thought it was going to rain, but it _____.
10. 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry. I _____ if I _____, but I _____.'

Ex .6. Change sentences with the verb to be for the future tense.

Н-р: This lion cub is so cute. (Этот львенок такой классный.) – This lion cub will be so cute. (Этот львенок будет таким классным.)

1. Bob is not ashamed. (Бобу не стыдно.)
2. My parents are tired after work. (Мои родители устали после работы.)
3. The fridge was switched off. (Холодильник был выключен.)
4. The trucks were too dirty. (Грузовики были слишком грязными.)
5. Anna's cherry-pie is delicious. (Анин вишневый пирог вкусный.)
6. We are not busy. (Мы не заняты.)
7. The weather wasn't chilly. (Погода не была прохладной.)
8. The books were not boring. (Книги не были скучными.)

Ex.7. Change sentences with the verb to be for the past tense.

Н-р: My marks are not fair. (Мои оценки несправедливы.) – My marks were not fair. (Мои оценки были несправедливы.)

1. My daughter is an economist. (Моя дочь экономист.)
2. The mail will be delivered. (Почта будет доставлена.)
3. The eggs are fresh. (Яйца свежие.)
4. It isn't rainy. (Дождя нет.)
5. I am at home. (Я дома.)
6. We are not ready. (Мы не готовы.)

Ex.8. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Мой дядя – ученый.
2. Я родом из Бразилии.
3. Супермаркет находится недалеко от нашего дома.
4. Джон не был голоден.

5. Мы болеем.
6. Дети были в школе.
7. Билеты не будут дешевыми.
8. Стулья не были деревянными.
9. Ключи будут на столе.
10. Эта футболка была подарком моей мамы.

Ex.9. Ask your companion.

Н-р: Kevin will be 20 years old tomorrow. (Кевину исполнится 20 лет завтра.) – Will Kevin be 20 years old tomorrow? (Кевину исполнится 20 лет завтра?)

1. She is thirsty. (Она хочет пить.)
2. They are afraid of monkeys. (Они боятся обезьян.)
3. The castles were very old. (Замки были очень древними.)
4. Sara was on holiday. (Сара была в отпуске.)
5. It will be cloudy tomorrow. (Завтра будет облачно.)

Ex.10. In these conversations, you are B. Read the information in brackets and then answer with *I think so, I hope not* etc.

1. (You don't like rain.)
A: Is it going to rain?
B: (hope) ***I hope not.***
2. (You need more money quickly.)
A: Do you think you'll get a pay rise soon?
B: (hope) _____
3. (You think Diane will probably get the job that she applied for.)
A: I wonder if Diane will get the job.
B: (expect) _____
4. (You're not sure whether Jill is married probably not.)
A: Is Jill married?
B: (think) _____
5. (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
A: Have you got a room for tonight?
B: (afraid) _____
6. (You're at a party. You have to leave early.)
A: Do you have to leave already?
B: (afraid) _____
7. (Ann normally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is Wednesday.)
A: Is Ann working tomorrow?
B: (suppose) _____
8. (You are going to a party. You can't stand John.)
A: Do you think John will be at the party?
B: (hope) _____
9. (You're not sure what time the concert is probably 7.30.)

A: Is the concert at 7.30?

B: (think) _____

3. PRONOUN

A pronoun is defined as a word or phrase that is used as a substitution for a **noun** or noun phrase, which is known as the pronoun's antecedent. Pronouns are short words and can do everything that nouns can do and are one of the building blocks of a sentence. Common pronouns are *he, she, you, me, I, we, us, this, them, that*.

Without pronouns, we'd constantly have to repeat nouns, and that would make our speech and writing repetitive. Using pronouns helps the flow of sentences and makes them more interesting.

He

It

You

I

They

We

Who

Him

Them

Whoever

Anyone

Something

Nobody

Pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. Billy, Caren, and I were playing poker with friends -> **We** were playing poker with friends.

2. Ellie loves watching movies. -> **She** loves watching movies, especially if **they** are comedies.

3. Will Daniel be going to the circus with Sarah? -> Will **he** be going **there** with **her**?

Types of Pronouns

Pronouns can be divided into numerous categories including:

Indefinite pronouns – those referring to one or more unspecified objects, beings, or places, such as someone, anybody, nothing. Indefinite pronoun examples:

1. Anyone
2. Somebody
3. Whichever
4. Whoever

5. Other
6. Something
7. Nobody

Personal pronouns – those associated with a certain person, thing, or group; all except you have distinct forms that indicate singular or plural number. Personal pronouns are always specific and are often used to replace a proper noun (someone's name) or a collective group of people or things. Personal pronouns have two main groups, one referring to the subject of the sentence and one to the object.

The first is used to replace the subject of the sentence: *I, you, he, she, it, we, you and they*. Notice that **you** is repeated as **you** can be singular, addressing one person, or plural, addressing a group of people.

Personal pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

Jack and David are friends. **They** play basketball together.

1. **I** have more money than **he**
2. **We** will be late if **you** don't hurry up.

The second group of pronouns replaces the object of the sentence: *me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them*. Consider the sentence again:

We will be late if **you** don't hurry up.

In the above example, **we** is the subject of the sentence, but **you** is the object. Other examples of pronouns replacing the object:

1. Peter sang the song to **me**.
2. Missing the train will cause **us** to be late.
3. She packed **them** tightly in the suitcase.

Reflexive pronouns – those preceded by the adverb, adjective, pronoun, or noun to which they refer, and ending in *-self* or *-selves*. Reflexive pronouns are used to refer back to the subject or clause of a sentence. The list of reflexive pronouns includes: *Myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*. Reflexive pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. Count **yourselves**
2. Annie only had **herself** to blame.
3. Peter and Paul had baked **themselves** cakes.

Demonstrative pronouns – those used to point to something specific within a sentence. There are only four demonstrative pronouns – *this, that, these, those* – but the usage can be a bit tricky at times. **This** and **that** are singular, whereas **these** and **those** are plural. As you may have noticed, there can be some crossover with indefinite pronouns when using *this* and *that*.

Demonstrative pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. I prefer **this**.

2. **These** are beautiful, but **those** belong to Danny.

3. Did you see **that**?

While it can be confusing, **this**, **that**, **these** and **those** can sometimes be used as demonstrative adjectives. The difference between the two is that a demonstrative pronoun replaces the noun and a demonstrative adjective qualifies the noun.

I prefer **this** *photo*. **These** flowers are *beautiful*, but **those** *vases* belong to Danny.

Did you see **that** *rainbow*?

It should be clear that **this**, **that**, **these** and **those** in the example above are not pronouns because they are being used to qualify the noun, but not replace it. A good trick for remembering the difference is that a demonstrative pronoun would still make sense if the word *one* or *ones* followed it in the sentence.

I prefer **this** (one). **These** (ones) are beautiful. Did you see **that** (one)? **Those** (ones) belong to Danny.

Possessive pronouns – those designating possession or ownership. Examples include: *mine, its, hers, his, yours, ours, theirs, whose*. Consider the example: This cat is **mine**.

Mine is indicating possession, that the cat belongs to me. Incidentally, *this* in the sentence is not a pronoun but demonstrative adjective as it qualifies the noun *cat*. You will find that possessive pronouns often follow phrases that contain demonstrative adjectives.

Possessive pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. Are these bananas **yours**?

2. This money is **ours**.

3. Is the fault **theirs** or **yours**?

Relative pronouns – those which refer to nouns mentioned previously, acting to introduce an adjective (relative) clause. They will usually appear after a noun to help clarify the sentence or give extra information. Examples include: *who, which, that, whom, whose*. Consider the following sentence:

The man *who* stole the car went to jail. The relative pronoun *who* acts to refer back to the noun *man*. It acts to open a clause by identifying the man as not just any man, but the one who stole the car. Relative pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. The table, **which** sits in the hallway, is used for correspondence.

2. The car **that** crashed into the wall was blue.

3. This is the woman, **whose** key you found.

Interrogative pronouns – Those which introduce a question. Examples include: *who, whom, whose, what, which*. We can usually identify an interrogative

pronoun by the fact that they often appear at the beginning of a question. Interrogative pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

Who will come to the party?

Which do you prefer?

What do you need?

Whose clothes are on the floor?

Whom did you tell?

Whom and who are often confused, and even native speakers will use them incorrectly. *Who* will replace the subject of a sentence, whereas *whom* will replace the direct or indirect object. A good tip for deciding which to use is that you can replace who in the sentence with a personal pronoun and it will still make sense. *Who will come to the party? I will come to the party.* The same system would not work for *Whom did you tell? I did you tell.*

Reciprocal pronouns –Those expressing mutual actions or relationship; i.e. one another.

There are just two reciprocal pronouns in English: *one another* and *each other*. They are mainly used to stop unnecessary repetition in a sentence, but also to reinforce the idea that collective and reciprocal actions are happening to more than one person or thing. John and Mary gave *each other* gifts. Using *each other* allows us the sentence to be more efficient than: John gave Mary a gift and Mary gave a gift to John. The countries worked with *one another* on national security. In this example, *one another* works to suggest that the action of working is being reciprocated back and forth by more than one country.

Reciprocal pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. The boxers punched **each other**

2. The couple love **one another** deeply

Intensive pronouns – those ending in *–self* or *–selves* and that serve to emphasize their antecedents. These are almost identical to reflexive pronouns, but rather than just referring back to the subject of the sentence they work to reinforce the action. In many cases, the sentence would still make sense without the intensive pronoun. Intensive pronoun examples in the following sentences are in bold for easy identification.

1. I will do it **myself**.

2. We made this pie **ourselves**.

3. A nation speaks for **itself** through elections.

Notice how the intensive pronoun is working to emphasize the statement. The sentence would still technically be correct without the intensive pronoun, but it adds some important context to its meaning.

Examples of Pronouns

In the following examples, the pronouns are italicized.

1. *We* are going on vacation.
2. Don't tell *me* that *you* can't go with *us*.
3. *Anybody* who says *it* won't be fun has no clue *what they* are talking about.
4. *These* are terribly steep stairs.
5. *We* ran into *each other* at the mall.
6. I'm not sure *which* is worse: rain or snow.
7. *It* is one of the nicest Italian restaurants in town.
8. Richard stared at *himself* in the mirror.
9. The laundry isn't going to do *itself*.
10. *Someone* spilled orange juice all over the countertop!

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Replace the underlined part of the sentence with a word beginning *some-, any-, no-, every-, and else*.

1. There's another thing I want to ask. *something else* _____
2. I think I'd like advice from another person. _____
3. Another thing is worrying me. _____
4. We're alone. All the other people have left. _____
5. Jim is mad about football. He thinks about _____
only that. _____
6. Is there another person waiting outside? _____
7. Does another person want to use the computer? _____
8. There isn't another thing in the box. Hi Sempty. _____
9. Mary has just told me that she loves another person! _____
10. Please be quick. Another person wants the computer. _____

Ex.2. Complete the sentences giving advice to climbers with a reflexive pronoun (*myself etc*).

1. If you are climbing alone, and have an accident, you have to try and keep calm. You have to ask _____ a number of questions.
2. Have you hurt _____ in any way?
3. Sometimes when we have injured _____, we don't even realize that this has happened.
4. Some people may not realize they have cut _____ until they see the blood.
5. It's important to think carefully: 'Can I look after _____ in this situation?'
6. In some cases you may have to make a difficult decision to save _____.

7. In a famous case, climber Aron Ralston trapped his arm, and was forced to cut it off in order to free ____.
8. Very few people think that they ____ could do that kind of thing.
9. But most of us would have to consider doing it if we found ____ in a similar situation.

Ex.3. Put the necessary relative pronouns, translate sentences.

1. Do you know the man _____ house was on Oire two years ago?
2. I don't like the Oilm _____ you are talking about.
3. This is the song _____ he has written himself.
4. Take the keys _____ open all the doors in this house.
5. The guide took us to the castle _____ was built 300 years ago.
6. The thief _____ stole the golden chain from the shop was caught.
7. They were ready wanted to help Flora, _____ eyes were full of tears.
8. This is the author _____ has written many popular humorous stories.
9. We read about the professor _____ works abroad.
10. This is the girl _____ my brother loved.

Ex.4. Fill the gaps with personal or reflexive pronouns.

1. He is quite right, I agree with ____ completely.
2. I looked at ____ in the mirror and left the house in a very good mood.
3. "Who is it?" — "It's ____ may I come in?"
4. Mr. Lloyds is very fat ____ weighs over a hundred kilos?
5. ... introduced his wife to the quests.
6. Where shall ____ meet, Bob?
7. James took the book and opened ____ .
8. We don't dress ____ for dinner here.
9. I taught ____ to play the quitar.
10. Selfish people only care about ____ .

Ex.5. Put "some", "any" or "no".

1. He does his homework without ____ difficulty.
2. This yeas all the apples are red, we are going out this morning to pick ____ .
3. I'd like ____ water, please.
4. There weren't ____ tomatoes left.
5. I won't go with you. I have ____ free time.
6. There aren't ____ students at the moment.
7. Sorry, I have ____ matches.
8. Do you have ____ money?
9. The box was empty. There were apples in it.
10. Pour me ____ milk, please.

Ex.6. Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 . Она ничего не сказала.
- 2 . Он посмотрел на нее с удивлением.

- 3 . Она не захотела пойти с ним.
- 4 . Я попросил его налить немного молока.
- 5 . Когда ему было 3 года, он мог сам одеваться.
- 6 . Простите, но у меня нет времени.
- 7 . Какая красивая картина! Она твоя?
- 8 . Возьми свою чашку. Эта чашка — моя.
- 9 . Его мнение отличается от моего.
- 10 . Сегодня вечером придет кто-нибудь?

Ex.7. Complete the sentences using possessive pronouns (*my, your, his, her, our, their*).

1. I left ___ car in the garage.
2. Mary hung ___ coat on the peg.
3. Jack had ___ hair cut.
4. Neil and David ate ___ supper.
5. I hope you enjoy ___ holiday.
6. We'll invite you round to ___ house sometime and complete these by adding a possessive with own.
7. You must make up ___ own mind.
8. The children had to cook ___ own supper.
9. Bill borrowed Jenny's car ___ own car was being repaired.
10. I'll bring ___ own sheets and towels.
11. Every dog had ___ own special basket to sleep in.
12. You should do ___ own washing up.

Ex.8. Put the correct indefinite pronoun.

We haven't got ___ (some/any/no) toilet paper. I am going to buy ___ (some/any/something) olive oil for the salad. Is there ___ (some/any/anything) petrol in our car? Sorry. We don't have ___ (some/any/no) free time now. Would you like ___ (something/anything nothing) to drink? Is there ___ (somebody/anybody/everybody) in the house? You can wish ___ (something/anything/nothing) you want on your birthday. ___ (somebody/everybody/nobody) knows that two plus two is four. Does ___ (someone/anyone/nobody) know the name of this film? It's very cold here, so ___ (somebody/anybody/nobody) wants an ice-cream. ___ (somebody/anybody/everybody) phoned you while you were in the bathroom. Your face seems familiar to me. Have I seen you ___ (somewhere/anywhere/nowhere) before? The cafe is closed. Can we eat ___ (somewhere/anywhere/nowhere) else? What would you like for dessert? – ___ (something/anything/nothing). I don't mind. It was raining cats and dogs. ___ (somebody/anybody/nobody) was outside.

Ex.9. Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns (I, we, you, he, she, it, they, me, us, him, her, them).

H-p: My teacher is very nice. I like... (Мой учитель очень хороший. Я люблю) – I like him. (Я люблю его.)

1. I work for my mother. I help ___ in the shop. And she gives ___ some money. (Я работаю со своей мамой. Я помогаю ___ в магазине. И она дает ___ немного денег.)
2. We have two dogs. We often take ___ for a walk. We also take a ball and our dogs like to play with ___ (У нас две собаки. Мы часто берем ___ на прогулку. Мы также берем мяч, и наши собаки любят играть с ___)
3. My brother works at the hospital. ___ is a doctor. (Мой брат работает в больнице. ___ доктор.)
4. My favorite subject is History. ___ is very exciting. (Мой любимый предмет – история. ___ очень увлекательна.)
5. Tom is a good lawyer. Do you know ___? (Том – хороший адвокат. Ты знаешь ___?)
6. Look at her. ___ is so beautiful! (Посмотри на нее. ___ такая красивая!)
7. Where is my notebook? I can't find ___. (Где мой ноутбук? Я не могу ___ найти.)
8. We are going to the beach. You can join ___ (Мы идем на пляж. Ты можешь присоединиться к ___)
9. I like Kate's hair. ___ is so thick and long. (Мне нравятся Катинины волосы. ___ такие густые и длинные.)
10. These are my souvenirs. ___ bought ___ in England. (Это мои сувениры. ___ купил ___ в Англии.)

Ex.10. Replace underlined words with personal pronouns.

H-p: I saw Bob yesterday, but Bob didn't see me. – I saw him yesterday, but he didn't see me. (Я видела его вчера, но он не видел меня.)

1. Jack and I met Samantha. Samantha gave Jack and me a letter for you. Take the letter.
2. Den and Mike are leaving for New York. I am driving Den and Mike to the airport.
3. I'm calling Alex. I haven't seen Alex for ages. And Alex isn't at school.
4. Let's go to the library with Peter and me. Peter and I need some books in Japanese.
5. Here is our cat Felix. Felix is hungry. I will feed Felix.

4. THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

The comparative form is -er or more ...

We use -er for short words (one syllable):

cheap -> cheaper, fast-> faster, large -> larger, thin -> thinner

We also use -er for two-syllable words that end in -y (-y -> -ier):
lucky -> luckier, early -> earlier, easy -> easier, pretty -> prettier

Compare these examples:

1. You're older than me.
2. The exam was quite easy - easier than we expected.
3. Can you walk a bit faster?

The superlative form is -est or most ... In general, we use -est for short words and most ... for longer words.

long -> longest, hot -> hottest, easy -> easiest, hard -> hardest
but most famous, most boring, most difficult, most expensive

These adjectives are irregular:

good -> best, bad -> worst, far -> furthest

We normally use the before a superlative (the longest/the most famous etc.):

1. Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
2. That film was really boring. It was the most boring film I've ever seen.
3. She is a really nice person - one of the nicest people I know.

Look at these examples:

1. Our holiday was too short - the time went very quickly.
2. The driver of the car was seriously injured in the accident.

Quickly and seriously are adverbs. Many adverbs are made from an adjective + -ly:

adjective: quick serious careful quiet heavy bad

adverb: quickly seriously carefully quietly heavily badly

Not all words ending in -ly are adverbs. Some adjectives end in -ly too, for example:

friendly lively elderly lonely silly lovely

Adjective or adverb?

1 Adjectives (quick/careful etc.) tell us about a noun. We use adjectives before nouns and after some verbs, especially be:

1. Tom is a careful driver. (not 'a carefully driver')
2. We didn't go out because of the heavy rain.
3. Please be quiet.
4. I was disappointed that my exam results were so bad.

We also use adjectives after the verbs look/feel/sound etc. (see Unit 98D):

1. Why do you always look so serious?
2. Adverbs (quickly/carefully etc.) tell us about a verb. An adverb tells us how somebody does something or how something happens:
 1. Tom drove carefully along the narrow road. (not 'drove careful')
 2. We didn't go out because it was raining heavily. (not 'raining heavy')
 3. Please speak quietly. (not 'speak quiet')

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete the sentence with one word.

1. I expected my exam results to be better.
My exam results were ___ than I expected.
2. Harry doesn't look so clever.
Harry is ___ than he looks.
3. The black coat is smaller than the brown one.
The brown coat is ___ than the black one.
4. Helen's brother is older than her.
Helen is ___ than her brother.
5. Jim Carrey's previous film wasn't as funny as his latest one.
Jim Carrey's latest film is ___ than the previous one.
6. I thought the station was nearer.
The station was ___ than I thought.
7. Maths lessons don't seem as short as English lessons.
Maths lessons seem ___ than English lessons.
8. I'm sure this year is colder than last year.
I'm sure last year was ___ than this year.
9. I'm not as happy as I used to be.
I used to be ___ than I am now.
10. The weather yesterday was worse.
The weather today is ___ than it was yesterday.

Ex.2. Write comparative and superlative degrees of comparison of adjectives.

1. angry («злой») — _____ — _____
2. beautiful («красивый») — _____ — _____
3. cheap («дешёвый») — _____ — _____
4. cold («холодный») — _____ — _____
5. diligent («трудолюбивый») — _____ — _____
6. expensive («дорогой») — _____ — _____
7. fast («быстрый, быстро») — _____ — _____
8. generous («щедрый») — _____ — _____
9. good («добрый») — _____ — _____
10. hot («горячий») — _____ — _____
11. indifferent («равнодушный») — _____ — _____
12. long («длинный») — _____ — _____
13. modest («скромный») — _____ — _____
14. new («новый») — _____ — _____
15. nice («красивый») — _____ — _____
16. old («старый») — _____ — _____
17. practical («практичный») — _____ — _____
18. sad («грустный») — _____ — _____
19. short («низкорослый») — _____ — _____

20. sincere («искренний») — _____ — _____
 21. small («маленький») — _____ — _____
 22. stupid («глупый») — _____ — _____
 23. tall («высокий») — _____ — _____

Ex.3. Complete the sentence that it means the same as the first sentence, and includes a superlative adjective.

1. I've never sat in a more comfortable classroom than this.
This is the ***most comfortable classroom I've ever*** sat in.
2. I've never eaten a tastier school lunch than this.
This is the _____ eaten.
3. I've never read a worse book than this.
This is the _____ read.
4. We've never had a more useful English lesson than this.
This is the _____ had.
5. I've never solved an easier problem than this.
This is the _____ solved.
6. I've never seen a more entertaining school play than this.
This is the _____ seen.
7. We've never used a more interesting textbook than this.
This is the _____ used.
8. I've never had a better friend than you.
You are the _____ had.

Ex.4. Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1. We stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town. (cheap)
2. Our hotel was cheaper than all the others in the town. (cheap)
3. The United States is very large, but Canada is _____. (large)
4. What's _____ country in the world? (small)
5. I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit ____ today. (good)
6. It was an awful day. It was _____ day of my life. (bad)
7. What is _____ sport in your country? (popular)
8. Everest is _____ mountain in the world. It is _____ than any other mountain. (high)
9. This building is over 250 metres high, but it's not _____ in the city. (tall)
10. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's _____ (comfortable)
11. What's _____ way to get to the station? (quick)
12. Which is _____ the bus or the train? (quick)
13. What's _____ thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
14. Sue and Kevin have got three daughters _____ is 14 years old. (old)

Ex.5. Complete the sentences. Use hardly+ the following verbs (in the correct form): change hear recognise say sleep speak

1. Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They _____ each other.
2. You're speaking very quietly. I can _____ you.
3. I'm very tired this morning. I _____ last night.
4. We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could _____ .
5. Kate was very quiet this evening. She _____ a word.
6. You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago. You've _____ .
7. I met David a few days ago. I hadn't seen him for a long time and he looks very different now. I _____ him.

Ex.6. Complete these sentences with hardly+ any/anybody/anything/ anywhere/ ever.

1. I'll have to go shopping. There's _____ to eat.
2. It was a very warm day and there was _____ wind.
3. 'Do you know much about computers?' 'No, _____ .
4. The hotel was almost empty. There was _____ staying there.
5. I listen to the radio a lot, but I _____ watch television.
6. Our new boss is not very popular _____ likes her.
7. It was very crowded in the room. There was _____ to sit.
8. We used to be good friends, but we _____ see each other now.
9. It was nice driving this morning. There was _____ traffic.
10. I hate this town. There's _____ to do and _____ to go.

Ex.7. Complete the sentences with adverbs. The first letter(s) of each adverb are given.

1. We didn't go out because it was raining heavily.
2. Our team lost the game because we played very ba____.
3. I had little difficulty finding a place to live. I found a flat quite ea____.
4. We had to wait for a long time but we didn't complain. We waited pa____.
5. Nobody knew George was coming to see us. He arrived unex____.
6. Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg____.

Ex.8. Put in the right word.

1. The driver of the car was seriously injured. (serious/seriously)
2. The driver of the car had serious injuries. (serious/seriously)
3. I think you behaved very _____. (selfish/selfishly)
4. Rose is _____ I upset about losing her job. (terrible/terribly)
5. There was a _____ change in the weather. (sudden/suddenly)
6. Everybody at the party was _____ dressed. (colourful / colourfully)
7. Linda likes wearing _____ clothes. (colourful / colourfully)
8. She fell and hurt herself quite _____. (bad/badly)
9. He says he didn't do well at school because he was _____ taught. (bad/badly)
10. Don't go up that ladder. It doesn't look _____. (safe/safely)

11. He looked at me _____when I interrupted him. (angry/angrily)

Ex.9. Complete each sentence using a word from the list. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).

careful(ly) complete(ly) continuous(ly) financial(ly) fluent(ly) happy/happily nervous(ly) perfect(ly) quick(ly) special(ly)

1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very quickly.
2. Tom doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always _____.
3. Sue works _____She never seems to stop.
4. Alice and Stan are very _____married.
5. Monica's English is very _____ although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
6. I cooked this meal _____for you, so I hope you like it.
7. Everything was very quiet. There was _____silence.
8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me _____.
9. Do you usually feel _____ before examinations?
10. I'd like to buy a car but it's _____ impossible for me at the moment.

Ex.10. Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

A. absolutely; reasonably; unusually; badly; seriously; unnecessarily; completely; slightly;

B. cheap; enormous; planned; badly; changed; ill; quiet; damaged; long.

1. I thought the restaurant would be expensive but it was reasonably cheap.
2. George's mother is _____ in hospital.
3. What a big house! It's _____.
4. It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only _____.
5. The children are normally very lively but they're _____ today.
6. When I returned home after 20 years, everything had _____.
7. The film was _____It could have been much shorter.
8. A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was _____.

5. PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are those words which are used to connect nouns, pronouns and phrases in any sentence. Usually preposition indicates the relationship between nouns that how they are connected to each other. It shows that whether words are connected through time, space and place Lets take few examples to understand this concept.

I found the pen on the table.

Here the preposition is “**on**” because it is showing a relationship between pen and the table.

Megha went to sleep late.

Here the preposition is “**to**” because it shows a state in which Megha is going into.

I am watching cricket match in the bedroom.

Here the preposition is “**in**” because it shows my place where I am sitting.

There are various types of prepositions based upon the uses of preposition in a sentence which are given as. Also these are the rules of prepositions.

There are five types of Prepositions given below.

1. Simple Prepositions
2. Compound Prepositions
3. Phrase Prepositions
4. Participle Prepositions
5. Double Prepositions

Now let us discuss all types of prepositions in details

Simple Prepositions

Simple preposition is used in simple sentences. The list of simple prepositions is given below.

In, on, at, to, from, with, by etc.

I am not coming **with** you.

She is **in** the IT park.

We are going **to** the market.

Compound Prepositions

When we join two **connect nouns, pronouns and phrases** then we use compound prepositions. Here is the list of simple prepositions.

About, across, among, between, beside, before etc.

We are **between** two states.

I will reach there **before** she leave.

Phrase Prepositions

According to, in spite of, an account of, in front of, in order to, for the sake of, by means of, with reference to, in addition to, due to etc.

According to me, there are three members of this company.

She is now **in front of** me.

Participle Prepositions

Participle preposition words are concerning, pending, and considering etc.

I think I can do it easily **considering** my knowledge.

Double Prepositions

These are the words like by outside of, out of, from behind and because of etc.

We have to solve two questions **out of** 5.

It was just **because of** you that we won the game.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the necessary prepositions and translate sentences.

1. Are you pleased _____ the result?
2. I was speaking _____ him yesterday.
3. She won't even look _____ meat.
4. It is _____ my field.
5. Put _____ your hand if you know the answer!
6. She put the washing _____ to dry.
7. The doctor listened _____ his heart.
8. I'll have to talk _____ that boy!
9. They were angry _____ this suggestion.
10. What are you laughing _____?

Ex.2. Complete the sentence with in, at, on or to.

1. Columbus and his three ships started on the voyage __America in August 1492.
2. They stopped first __one of the Canary Islands.
3. On 12 October they came __the coast of the Bahamas.
4. From there they went__ Cuba, where one of the ships, the Pinto, left in search of gold __an island called 'Babeque'.
5. Columbus continued with the other two ships and they came __Hispaniola on 5 December.
6. Unfortunately, the flagship Santa Maria ran aground__a reef on Christmas Eve, and sank the next day.
7. Columbus built a fort __the shore and left some of his men there, because there was not room for all the men __the tiny Nina, the other ship.
8. While he was on his way back __Spain, Columbus found the Pinto again.
9. The two ships left together, but were parted by a storm __the North Atlantic.
10. Both ships arrived__Lisbon on 15 March within a few hours of each other.

Ex.3. Complete the sentence with at, in, on, next or last.

1. The __time you visit US, you must stay for dinner.
2. Wait here, and I'll be back __a few minutes.
3. I haven't seen Helen since __month.
4. Are you having a party__ your birthday?
5. Your salary will be paid__the end of the month.
6. We didn't take a trip abroad __summer, but we're going to Crete this summer.
7. Peter managed to break his leg __ the first day of his skiing holiday.
8. Are you going to university __year?
9. Take some warm clothes, because the temperature drops __night.
10. __two weeks' time, the school year will be over!

Ex.4. Translate the phrases into English, paying attention to what question the words dependent on verbs answer - "where?" or "wherever?"

Прыгнуть в холодное озеро, купаться в реке, играть на траве, играть в шахматы, положить в ящик для игрушек, хранить под креслом, висеть на фасаде дома, ходить в музыкальную школу, учиться в техническом университете, поступить в университет, прийти к друзьям его брата, продавать в магазине, поехать в южные страны, поставить у кухонного окна, спать на полу, находиться в пенале, жарить на большой сковороде, варить (= кипятить) в кастрюле, смешивать в стакане, положить на полку, загорать на пляжах, нырять в море, уронить в суп, работать в городском парке, сидеть на новой скамейке, ложиться в постель, ехать на трамвае, сесть в машину, сидеть за круглым столом, прыгнуть на стол, путешествовать на автобусе, залезть на большой дуб, отдыхать на побережье.

Ex.5. Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. Three people were taken to hospital after the accident.
2. I met Kate on my way _____ home. (*no preposition*)
3. We left our luggage _____ the station and went to find something to eat.
4. Shall we take a taxi _____ the station or shall we walk?
5. I have to go _____ the bank today. What time does it open?
6. The Amazon flows _____ the Atlantic Ocean.
7. 'Do you have your camera with you?' 'No, I left it _____ the car.'
8. Have you ever been _____ China?
9. I had lost my key, but I managed to climb _____ the house through a window.
10. We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way _____ the airport.
11. We had lunch _____ the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12. Welcome _____ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
13. We drove along the main road for about a kilometer and then turned _____ a narrow side street.
14. Did you enjoy your visit _____ the museum?
15. I'm tired. As soon as I get _____ home, I'm going _____ bed.
16. Marcel is French. He has just returned _____ France after two years _____ Brazil.
17. Carl was born _____ Chicago, but his family moved _____ New York when he was three. He still lives _____ New York.

Ex.6. Put the prepositions *of, with, on, about, at, to*.

1. Mrs Jacobs is very **popular** _____ her students.
2. Helen is very **nervous** _____ starting at her new school.
3. You shouldn't be **jealous** _____ other's people success.
4. Rania is very **fond** _____ her young niece.
5. I'm quite **keen** _____ Maths.
6. She's **good** _____ drawing.
7. Nadia is quite **proud** _____ her brother's sporting achievements.
8. They are very **close** _____ their parents.
9. I'm not very **patient** _____ stubborn people.

Ex.7. Put the prepositions *in* (6), *for*, *out* (2).

1. Are these bikes ____ hire in this city?
2. Who's ____ charge of your baseball team?
3. Have you checked if your climbing equipment is ____ good condition?
4. Are you ____ favour of women boxing?
5. You are unfit. Look how ____ of breath you are after coming up those stairs.
6. I am totally ____ favour of contact sports.
7. Losing this match is ____ of the question?
8. Jack is ____ charge of the sports equipment.
9. These golf clubs are ____ excellent condition.

Ex.8. Put the prepositions for, of, with, in.

1. My little brother is eight and still believes __magic.
2. The reason __ Earth Day celebrations is to create environmental awareness.
3. Although she is twenty, she is still afraid __the dark.
4. The Toronto Film Festival is famous __appearances by major Hollywood stars.
5. The road was crowded __ cars and buses heading for the festival.
6. They got tired __waiting for the band to appear and took a walk around the park.
7. She is interested __ learning more about traditional celebrations.
8. Everyone was pleased __ the success of the Arts Festival.

Ex.9. Put the prepositions in, from, about, of.

1. Jack asked Tom if he had heard __ the Loch Ness monster.
2. Have you heard __Tom lately?
3. The Yeti has been part __ Tibetan folklore for years.
4. They didn't succeed __ locating the side.
5. Have you ever thought __ travelling abroad?
6. They went __search of another way to reach the lake without been seeing.
7. John knew __ experience that the road was dangerous.
8. They felt very nervous __ going into the haunted house.

Ex.10. Put the prepositions to, about, into, with, of, from.

1. Craig has got involved __ a community action group.
2. Jack thought __ a good way to raise money for the charity.
3. Have you ever thought __ doing some volunteer work?
4. People shouldn't get a pet if they can't take care __ it.
5. Many of the animals in the shelter have been rescued __ bad homes.
6. Jane burst __ tears when she saw the neglected animal.
7. If you show kindness __an animal, it will be a loving pet.

6. WORD ORDER

Verb + object

The verb and the object of the verb normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

I like children very much. (not 'I like very much children')

Did you see your friends yesterday?

Ann often plays tennis

Study these -examples. Notice how the verb and the object go together each time:

1. Do you clean the house every weekend? (not 'Do you clean every weekend the house?')

2. Everybody enjoyed the party very much. (not 'Everybody enjoyed very much the party')

3. Our guide spoke English fluently. (not '...spoke fluently English')

4. I not only lost all my money - I also lost my passport. (not 'I lost also my passport')

Place and time

Usually the verb and the place (where?) go together:

go home, live in a city, walk to work etc.

If the verb has an object, the place comes after the verb + object:

take somebody home, meet a friend in the street

Time (when? /how often? /how long?) normally goes after place:

1. Tom walks to work every morning. (not 'Tom walks every morning to work')

2. She has been in Canada since April.

3. We arrived at the airport early.

Study these examples. Notice how time goes after place:

1. I'm going to Paris on Monday. (not 'I'm going on Monday to Paris')

2. They have lived in the same house for a long time.

3. Don't be late. Make sure you're here by 8 o'clock.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.

1. usually / at 10 o'clock / out of the garage / in the morning / drives / his bike / Fred

2. a shower / after dinner / often / Mrs Lewis / takes

3. a parking place / near the library / we / find / seldom

4. to / I / on / a / night-club / sometimes / Saturdays / go

5. fly / my parents / to Australia / sometimes / I / in winter / and

6. enjoys / very much / swimming / in the pool / always / Mary

7. hardly / last year / could / skate / I

8. is / near / house / there / new / a / our / cinema

9. got / my / problems / I / with / have / home-task / some

10. well / think / your / very / I / don't / sister / drives
11. to / parents / once / the theatre / month / my / a / go
12. his / car / two / ago / Jim / sold / years
13. necklace / can't / anywhere / Cindy / her / find
14. been / to / India / Mike / has / year / already / this
15. lunch / never / weekdays / she / has / on

Ex.2. Translate these sentences into English.

1. Телевизор я смотрю редко.
2. На улице темно, и я скоро подую спать.
3. Они что-то очень шумно обсуждают в спальне.
4. Он медленно шел вдоль реки.
5. На уроках мы часто поем песни.
6. Я тихо закрыла дверь и сразу же пошла в ванну.
7. Мой дядя очень любит рыбалку.
8. Анна умеет хорошо играть в теннис.
9. Она все время кричит на детей.
10. Твои книги я положу на стол.
11. Я недостаточно хорошо его знаю.
12. По телевизору много хороших фильмов сегодня.
13. В парке есть красивый фонтан.
14. В прошлый вторник было очень ветрено.
15. Эти туфли я купила в Италии.

Ex.3. Put the subclause parts of sentence in the correct order

1. Could you tell us what time ___ (it is – is it – does it)?
2. Do you know when ___ (our bus leave – our bus leaves – does our bus leave)?
3. I wonder if ___ (he is a doctor – is he a doctor – a doctor is he).
4. Do you remember what ___ (did Jane wear – Jane wear – Jane wore) yesterday?
5. Do you think ___ (she can cook well – can she cook well – she can well cook)?

Ex.4. Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Everybody enjoyed the party very much. Ok _____
2. Ben walks every morning to work. Ben walks every morning to work.
3. Joe doesn't like very much football. _____
4. I drink three or four cups of coffee every morning. _____
5. I ate quickly my breakfast and went out. _____
6. Are you going to invite to the party a lot of people? _____

7. I phoned Tom immediately after hearing the news. _____
8. Did you go late to bed last night? _____
9. Did you learn a lot of things at school today? _____
10. I met on my way home a friend of mine. _____

Ex.5. Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.

1. (the party / very much / everybody enjoyed) _____ .
2. (we won / easily / the game) _____ .
3. (quietly / the door / I closed) _____ .
4. (Tanya / quite well / speaks / German) _____ .
5. (Sa m / all the time / TV / watches) _____ .
6. (again / please don't ask / that question) _____ .
7. (football / every weekend / does Kevin play?) _____ .
8. (some money / I borrowed / from a friend of mine) _____ .

Ex.6. Translate into English, paying attention to the word order in the English sentence.

1. Этот рассказ я читал несколько лет назад.
2. В этом доме живут несколько сот человек.
3. Этого человека я знаю очень хорошо.
4. Этот фильм мне очень нравится.
5. Мы не об этом рассказывали ему вчера.
6. Эту книгу я дал почитать Тому.
7. Мне они об этом не говорили.
8. Он мне вчера дал эти журналы.
9. Мне об этом говорил один мой приятель.
10. На этом заводе работает около двух тысяч человек.
11. Этот вопрос мы обсудили с ним вчера.
12. В этой работе примут участие наши преподаватели.
13. Я не очень хорошо знаю этого человека.

Ex.7. Put the parts of the sentence in the right order.

1. (the party/very much/everybody enjoyed) Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2. (we won/easily/the game) _____ .
3. (quietly/the door /I closed) _____ .
4. (Diane/quite well /speaks/German) _____ .
5. (Tim/all the time television/watches) _____ .
6. (again/please don't ask/that question) _____ .
7. (football /every weekend/does Ken play?) _____ .
8. (some money/I borrowed/from a friend of mine) _____ .

Ex.8. Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the right order.

1. (for a long time/have lived /in the same house)

They have lived in the same house for a long time.

2. (to the bank every Friday /go) I _____.
3. (home/did you come/so late) Why _____?
4. (her car/ drives /everyday /to work) Ann _____.
5. (been/recently/to the cinema) I haven't _____.
6. (at the top of the page/your name/write) Please _____.
7. (her name/after a few minutes/remembered) I _____.
8. (around the town/all morning/walked) We _____.
9. (on Saturday night/didn't see you/at the party) I _____.
10. (some interesting books/found/in the library) We _____.
11. (the children/yesterday/to the zoo/took) Sally _____.
12. (opposite the park/a new hotel/are building) They _____.

Ex.9. Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1. Ann doesn't drink tea. (often) **Ann doesn't often drink tea**.
2. We were on holiday. (all) _____.
3. We were staying at the same hotel. (all) _____.
4. We enjoyed ourselves. (all) _____.
5. Catherine is very generous. (always) _____.
6. I don't have to work on Saturdays. (usually) I _____.
7. Do you watch television in the evenings? (always) _____.
8. Martin is learning French. He is learning Italian. (also) _____.
Martin is learning French. He _____.
9. That hotel is very expensive. (probably) _____.
10. It costs a lot to stay there. (probably) _____.
11. I can help you, (probably) _____.
12. I can't help you. (probably) _____.

Ex.10. Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1. I **can never remember** her name. (remember/never/can)
2. I _____ sugar in coffee. (take/usually)
3. I _____ hungry when I get home from work. (am/usually)
4. 'Where's Jim?' 'He _____ home early.' (gone has/probably)
5. Mark and Diane _____ in Manchester. (both were/born)
6. Liz is a good pianist. She _____ very well. (sing/also/can)
7. Our car _____ down. (often/breaks)
8. They live in the same street as me but I _____ to them. (never/have/spoken)
9. We _____ a long time for the bus. (have/always/to wait)
10. My sight isn't very good. I _____ with glasses. (read/can/only)
11. I _____ early tomorrow. (probably/leaving/will/be)
12. I'm afraid I _____ able to come to the party. (probably/be I won't)
13. It's difficult to contact Sue. She _____ at home when I phone her. (is/hardly ever)

14. We _____ in the same place. We haven't moved. (still/are/living)
15. If we hadn't taken the same train, we _____ each other. (never/met/would/have)
16. 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I _____ at this time of day.' (am/always)

7. SIMPLE TENSES (PRESENT SIMPLE, PAST SIMPLE, FUTURE SIMPLE)

Present Simple

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We are not thinking only about now. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general. It is not important whether the action is happening at the time of speaking:

1. Nurses **work** after patients in hospitals.
2. I usually **go** away at weekends.
3. The earth **goes** round the sun.

Remember that we say: **he/she/it -s**. Don't forget the s:

I **work** ... but He **works** ... They **teach** ... but My sister **teaches** ...

For spelling (-s or -es), see Appendix 6.

We use do/does to make questions and negative sentences:

do I/we/you/they work?/come?/do?

does he/she/it work?/come?/do?

I/we/you/they don't work/come/do

he/she/it doesn't work/come/do

1. I **come** from Canada. Where do you **come** from?
2. 'Would you like a cigarette?' 'No, thanks. I **don't smoke**.'
3. What does this word **mean**? (not 'What **means** this word?')

Past Simple

Very often the past simple ends in -ed (regular verbs):

1. I **work** in a travel agency now. Before that I **worked** in a shop.
2. We **invited** them to our party but they **decided** not to come.
3. The police **stopped** me on my way home last night.
4. She **passed** her examination because she **studied** very hard.

But many verbs are irregular. The past simple does not end in -ed. For example:

write -> wrote

1. Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.

see -> saw

2. We **saw** Rose in town a few days ago.

go -> went

3. I **went** to the cinema three times last week.

shut -> shut

4. It was cold, so I shut the window.

For a list of irregular verbs.

In questions and negatives we use did/didn't + infinitive (enjoy/see/go etc.):

I/she/they: enjoyed/saw/went

Did: you/she/they: enjoy?/see?/go?

I/she/they: didn't: enjoy/see/go

1. A: Did you go out last night?

B: Yes, I went to the cinema but I didn't enjoy the film much.

2. 'When did Mr Thomas die?' 'About ten years ago.'

3. They didn't invite her to the party, so she didn't go.

4. 'Did you have time to write the letter?' 'No, I didn't.'

The past of be (am/is/are) is was/were:

I/he/she/it was/wasn't

we/you/they were/weren't

was I/he/she/it?

were we/you/they?

Note that we do not use did in negatives and questions with was/were:

1. I was angry because they were late.

2. Was the weather good when you were on holiday?

3. They weren't able to come because they were so busy.

Future Simple

We do not use will to say what somebody has already arranged or decided to do in the future:

1. Ann is working next week. (not 'Ann will work')

2. Are you going to watch television this evening? (not 'will you watch')

For 'I'm working ...' and 'Are you going to ...?'

But often, when we talk about the future, we are not talking about what somebody has decided to do. For example:

CHRIS: Do you think Ann will pass the exam?

JOE: Yes, she'll pass easily.

'She'll pass' does not mean 'she has decided to pass'. Joe is saying what he knows or thinks will happen. He is predicting the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use will/won't.

1. Jill has been away a long time. When she returns, she'll find a lot of changes.

2. 'Where will you be this time next year?' 'I'll be in Japan.'

3. That plate is very hot. If you touch it, you'll burn yourself.

4. Tom won't pass the examination. He hasn't worked hard enough for it.

5. When will you know your exam results?

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Use the words in brackets to form sentences in Present Simple. Please pay attention in what form the sentence should be (affirmative, interrogative or negative).

1. They _____ football at the institute. (to play)
2. She _____ emails. (not / to write)
3. _____ you _____ English? (to speak)
4. My mother _____ fish. (not / to like)
5. _____ Ann _____ any friends? (to have)
6. His brother _____ in an office. (to work)
7. She _____ very fast. (cannot / to read)
8. _____ they _____ the flowers every 3 days? (to water)
9. His wife _____ a motorbike. (not / to ride)
10. _____ Elizabeth _____ coffee? (to drink)

Ex.2. Put the verb “to be” in the required form Present Simple.

1. I _____ a student.
2. My father ... not a shop-assistant, he _____ a scientist.
3. _____ your aunt a nurse? - Yes, she _____.
4. _____ they at home? - No, they _____ not. They _____ at school.
5. _____ you an engineer? - Yes, I _____.
6. _____ your friend a photographer? No, she _____ not a photographer, she _____ a student.
7. _____ your brothers at school? - Yes, they _____.
8. ... this her watch? - Yes, it _____.
9. Max _____ an office-worker.
10. We _____ late, sorry!

Ex.3. Translate into English.

1. Она занята. (to be busy)
2. Я не занят.
3. Вы заняты?
4. Они дома? (to be at home)
5. Его нет дома.
6. Я не знаю.
7. Они знают?
8. Она не знает.
9. Кто знает?
10. Никто не знает.
11. Он читает английские книги? (to read English books)
12. Они никогда не читают. (never / to read)
13. У неё есть квартира? (to have a flat)

14. У него ничего нет.
15. Это кто?

Ex.4. Complete the Present Simple sentence with the affirmative or negative form of the verb in brackets. Use contractions.

1. The plane (leave) ___ in half an hour but Nick (not / be) ___ at the airport yet.
2. My best friend (love) ___ science fiction films but they (not / interest) ___ me.
3. I (not / study) ___ chemistry because it (be) ___ difficult.
4. I (not / dance) ___ because I (look) ___ stupid.
5. The Sun (not / go) ___ round the Earth, the Earth (go) ___ round the Sun!
6. My new computer (do) ___ lots more things than my old one, and it (not / crash) ___.
7. My dad (not / have) ___ any qualifications but he (have) ___ a really good job.
8. Fire (need) ___ oxygen to burn. It (not / burn) ___ without oxygen.
9. My teacher (not / own) ___ a mobile phone because some people think they (be) ___ bad for your health.
10. According to scientists, animals (live) ___ longer if they (not / eat) ___ too much.

Ex.5. Complete the sentence with the past simple form of the verb in brackets.

1. Greek actors (wear) **wore** masks and special boots.
2. Spartan children (take) ___ baths only two or three times a year.
3. The philosopher Socrates (drink) ___ poison and died.
4. Alexander the Great's army (go) ___ as far as China.
5. Heron of Alexandria (make) ___ a kind of jet engine.
6. The Roman Emperor Caligula's name (mean) ___ 'Happy Soldier'.
7. Roman mathematics (have) ___ no zero.
8. Most Roman girls (get) ___ married at the age of 18.
9. Roman soldiers (pay) ___ for their own equipment and food.
10. The Romans (know) ___ how to make soap and cement.

Ex.6. Complete each sentence with a phrase from the list.

I'll be waiting, I'll be watching, I'll be living, I'll be starting, I'll be going, I'll be catching, I'll be working.

1. Next Tuesday at this time _____ on the beach!
2. _____ outside the cinema at 7.30. See you then!
3. All tomorrow afternoon _____ on my history project.
4. This time next week _____ my holiday!
5. In three years' time _____ into the army.
6. Don't phone at 9.00, because _____ the match then.
7. In ten years' time, I expect _____ in my own fiat.
8. This time tomorrow _____ the plane to Brazil!

Ex.7. Rewrite affirmative sentences into negative. Past Simple.

Н-р: I walked and swam much during my vacation. (Я много гулял и плавал во время каникул.) – I didn't walk or swim much during my vacation.

1. My friends fell in love with the same girl. (Мои друзья влюбились в одну и ту же девушку.)
2. They had much fun at the Christmas party. (Они весело провели время на Рождественской вечеринке.)
3. It rained cats and dogs this morning. (Утром шел дождь как из ведра.)
4. His parents got married 30 years ago. (Его родители поженились 30 лет назад.)
5. Bob really enjoyed our jazz festival. (Бобу очень понравился наш джазовый фестиваль.)
6. My boyfriend lived in Japan for 2 years and then he moved to Italy. (Мой друг жил в Японии 2 года, и затем он переехал в Италию.)
7. The waiter dropped the tray with glasses. (Официант уронил поднос с бокалами.)
8. I took a taxi from the centre to the airport. (Я взял такси из центра до аэропорта.)
9. The woman bought a dress and a pair of shoes at the market. (Женщина купила на рынке платье и пару туфель.)
10. My kids went to a summer camp in August. (Мои дети ездили в летний лагерь в августе.)

Ex.8. Ask your companion. Look at the sample.

We arrived back home very late. (Мы вернулись домой очень поздно.) – Did you arrive back home very late? (Вы вернулись домой очень поздно?)

1. He smoked too much yesterday. (Он слишком много курил вчера.)
2. My sister was born in a small village. (Моя сестра родилась в маленькой деревушке.)
3. My neighbor visited many African countries last year. (Мой сосед посетил много африканских стран в прошлом году.)
4. We had frosty weather in Finland. (У нас была морозная погода в Финляндии.)
5. Harry hurt his leg on his motorbike. (Гарри повредил ногу на своем мотоцикле.)
6. The Americans landed on the moon. (Американцы высадились на Луне.)
7. My aunt cooked chicken and rice for lunch. (Моя тетя приготовила курицу с рисом на обед.)
8. A strong wind destroyed our house. (Сильный ветер разрушил наш дом.)
9. He drove 50 km per hour. (Он ехал со скоростью 50 км в час.)
10. His car was in the garage. (Его машина была в гараже.)

Ex.9. Select and put a suitable verb in the text instead of a figure, change into the past tense form.

put on (надевать) – enter (входить) – sing (петь) – feel (чувствовать) – be (быть) – see (видеть) – wake up (просыпаться) – celebrate (праздновать) – hear (слышать) – congratulate (поздравлять) – give (давать, дарить)

Kate (1) her 20th birthday last Saturday. The weather (2) wonderful, so she (3) in a good mood in the morning. She (4) a beautiful white dress. In the living-room she (5) a lot of bright balloons and a big birthday cake on the table. Then she (6) her favourite music. At that moment all her friends and relatives (7) the living-room. They (8) her, (9) songs and (10) her many presents. Kate (11) very happy.

Ex.10. Use the verbs in the brackets in the correct Future Simple form.

1. Next year I _____ university. (to finish). 2. He _____ German next month. (not / to study). 3. Steve _____ sixteen in May. (to be). 4. You're very tired. I - _____ you. (to help). 5. I think I _____ the exam. (to pass). 6. One of these days we _____ to the village. (to go). 7. _____ you _____ me cook the fried chicken? (to help). 8. We _____ you today's evening. (not / to meet). 9. In summer Molly _____ to the countryside every weekends. (to go). 10. When _____ she _____ a new phone? (to buy). 11. I _____ (not to tell) your secret to anyone. 12. My friends want to buy a new TV. I think they _____ (to go) to the electronics store. 13. He's uncle _____ (to go) to German next spring. 14. When _____ his uncle _____? (to arrive). 15. I hope he _____ the new magazine. (to buy). 16. It's very rainy. I think we _____ to the beach. (to go). 17. I forgot the word. I _____ it up in the dictionary. (to look). 18. I sent the letter this afternoon. It _____ until Friday. (to arrive). 19. Classes _____ at 8.30 a.m. (to begin). 20. Sam usually _____ seven classes a day. (not/ to have)

Ex.11. Translate the sentences into English, using Past, Present or Future Simple.

1. Он не будет заказывать пиццу. 2. Я видел Питера в магазине вчера. 3. Саре нравится коллекционировать кукол. 4. У нее был день рождения в прошлую пятницу? 5. Этот фильм снял не Тарантино. 6. Разве Карл не поедет к бабушке на выходных? 7. Вы с ней согласны? 8. Я принесу тебе чашечку кофе. 9. Он уехал в Берлин в 2005 году. 10. Мы навестим дедушку завтра. 11. Разве она не хорошо поет? 12. Я вам перезвоню. 13. Они развелись пять лет назад. 14. Почему ты не попросишь сестру о помощи? 15. Ты выйдешь за меня замуж? 16. Майкл жил в Германии год назад. 17. Ты любишь читать книги? 18. Она будет дома. 19. Кто помогает тебе по дому? 20. Он звонил мне на прошлой неделе.

8. TYPES OF QUESTIONS (GENERAL QUESTIONS, ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS, SPECIAL QUESTIONS, DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS)

In questions we usually put the subject after the first verb:

subject + verb verb + subject

1. **Will Tom** be here tomorrow?
2. **Have you** been working hard?
3. When **was the house** built?

Remember that the subject comes after the first verb:

Is Katherine working today? (not Is working Katherine)

In present simple questions, we use **do/does**:

1. **Do** you **Live** near here?
2. What time **does** the film **start**?

But do not use do/does/did if who/what etc. is the subject of the sentence.

Compare:

In these examples, **who/what** etc. is the subject:

1. Who wants something to eat? (not Who does want)
2. What happened to you last night? (not What did happen)
3. How many people came to the meeting? (not did come)
4. Which bus goes to the centre? (not does go)

Note the position of prepositions in questions beginning Who/What/ Which/ Where ...?

1. **Who** do you want to speak **to**?
2. **Which** job has Tina applied **for**?
3. **What** was the weather **Like** yesterday?
4. **Where** are you **from**?

You can use preposition + **whom** in formal style:

1. **To whom** do you wish to speak?

Isn't it ...? I Didn't you ...? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

- 1) Didn't you hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.

or when we expect the listener to agree with us:

Haven't we met before?' Yes, I think we have.'

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:

Don t you want to go? { Yes. (=Yes, I want to go)

No. (= No, I don't want to go)

Note the word order in negative questions beginning **Why** ...?:

Why don't we eat out tonight? (not Why we don't eat)

Why wasn't Emma at work yesterday? (not Why Emma wasn't)

Alternative questions

A feature of alternative questions is that the answer to them is the choice of one of several objects, persons, qualities, etc.

In an alternative question, there is always an “**or**”.

Alternative questions, like general ones, differ from narrative sentences in word order. In this type of question, the word order is the same as in general, that is, the verb comes first.

Learn some examples.

Is your girlfriend brunette **or** blonde? (= Is your girlfriend brunette or is she blonde) - Твоя девушка брюнетка или блондинка?

The answer to a similar question will be as follows:

She is brunette или She is blonde.

Are these books new **or** old? — Эти книги новые или старые?

They are old или They are new.

Disjunctive questions

The separation question in English is used to obtain confirmation of the assumption made. This question has two parts.

The first part is an affirmative or negative sentence with a direct word order.

You speak English ...

he second part is a brief general question, consisting of an auxiliary or modal verb and a pronoun in the nominative case.

... don't you?

If the first part of the question has an affirmative form, then the second part is negative. The auxiliary verb is placed at the time in which the verb-predicate stands. For instance:

He is a part time student, isn't he?

If the first part of the question is a negative sentence, then the second part will be in the affirmative.

You don't go to the swimming-pool, do you?

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Add a positive tag to each sentence.

1. Madagascar isn't in the Atlantic Ocean, is it?
2. Astronauts haven't landed on Mars, ____?
3. The climate won't get any worse, ____?
4. The Romans didn't sail to America, ____?
5. Chickens can't fly, ____?
6. The world's population isn't growing in all countries, ____?

Ex.2. Add a negative tag to each sentence.

1. You were at the same school as Maria, weren't you ?
2. This is the way to the station' _____?
3. You've forgotten to buy the tickets, _____?
4. They understand this problem, _____ ?
5. Helen is coming to the party, _____?
6. The bus took a long time, _____?

Ex.3. Ask a general question and give a short answer.

1. Ted's advice wasn't clever.
2. They had to go to school on Saturday.
3. He won't be able to speak Italian in two months.
4. They are not going to meet him.
5. She mustn't take these pills.
6. She won't have to write the exercise again.
7. He couldn't swim last summer.
8. She has to wear a uniform.
9. She will be able to make sandwiches tomorrow.

Ex.4. Give short answers to these general questions.

1. Did you go to the country last summer?
2. Did you go for a picnic last Sunday?
3. Can you see the sun now?
4. Can you see the stars now?
5. Does your pet sleep at night?
6. Do you like watching the clouds?

Ex.5. Change these sentences into interrogative.

1. The rabbit is hopping now.
2. Children are swimming now.
3. I am reading a book now.
4. Dave is riding his bike now.
5. We are planting some seeds now.
6. She is giving me a rubber now.

Ex.6. Translate the sentences into English.

Он вчера ходил в школу или в кино? Ты видишь мою маму или бабушку? Она спит или нет? Они могут говорить по-немецки или по-французски? Соня придет в понедельник или пятницу? Он живет в доме или квартире? Аэропорт большой или маленький? Сколько человек в твоей семье – три или четыре? В этом классе находятся студенты или учителя? Ты на ужин ешь мясо или рыбу каждый день? В спальне радио или телевизор? Твоя жена предпочитает сама водить машину или чтобы ее возили? Они видели эту

церковь или нет? Тим может дать эту книгу на 2 или 3 недели? Твой отец пользуется компьютером на работе или дома?

Ex.7. Translate the sentences into Russian.

Are there two or four teachers in this class? Does your father work in the evening or in the daytime? Which city do you like — Paris or London? Who has any pet at home? Is he good at Science or Mathematics? Is your friend's job interesting or not? Does Sam drink much milk or water? Is it good for her health? Is parrot green or yellow? Do you often change your toothbrush? Is he cleaning her car or his one? Are elephants insects? Is Hamlet a play or TV show? Are you afraid of bees? Do you like mice or cats?

Ex.8. Ask a special question using the words in the brackets.

1. Fred usually drives carefully. (who). 2. There were a lot of people at the party last night. (where) 3. My uncle told me the good news. (whom) 4. This computer game has four levels. (how many) 5. I made a big mistake. (who) 6. They danced till the morning. (how long) 7. I am in his house now. (whose) 8. He eats much pizza a week. (how much) 9. I will become a millionaire. (in what way) 10. I didn't know the capital of France as a child. (when) 11. There are five things I know about fashion. (how many) 12. Cristina is so excited about her dress. (what) 13. Birds can travel almost anywhere they want. (where) 14. He turns down my help. (why) 15. Producers bring together the key members of the creative team in pre-production. (when)

Ex.9. Choose the right variant What / Which .

1. ___ way shall we go, to the left or to the right? 2. There are two cars in the garage. ___ car is Henry's? 3. ___ people live in the country? 4. ___ of those 2 books is yours? 5. I can't find your umbrella — ___ colour is it? 6. ___ nationality are you? I'm Brazilian. 7. ___ river flows through Moscow? 8. ___ pop groups do you like best? 9. ___ cars are better, German or Japanese ones? 10. ___ are you doing? 11. I don't mind ___ film we watch — King Kong or Narnia — both sound great. 12. Do you know ___ of her two books was awarded the Pulitzer Prize? 13. ___ is your favourite colour? 14. ___ kind of books do you like? 15. We've got green tea and black tea: ___ would you like?

Ex.10. Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (when/was/built/this house) When was this house built ?
2. (how/cheese/is/made) _____ ?
3. (when/invented /the computer/was) _____ ?
4. (why/Sue/working/ isn't/today) _____ ?
5. (what time/coming/your friends/are) _____ ?
6. (why/was/cancelled/the concert) _____ ?
7. (where/your mother/was/born) _____ ?

8. (why/you/to the party/didn't/come) _____?
9. (how/the accident/did/happen) _____?
10. (why/this machine/doesn't/work) _____?

9. CONTINUOUS TENSES (PRESENT CONTINUOUS, PAST CONTINUOUS, FUTURE CONTINUOUS)

Present Continuous

I am doing something = I'm in the middle of doing something; I've started doing it and I haven't finished yet.

Often the action is happening at the time of speaking:

1. Please don't make so much noise. I'm working. (not 'I work')
2. 'Where's Margaret?' 'She's having a bath.' (not 'she has a bath')
3. Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more. (not 'it doesn't rain')
4. (at a party) Hello, Jane. Are you enjoying the party? (not 'do you enjoy')
5. I'm tired. I'm going to bed now. Goodnight!

But the action is not necessarily happening at the time of speaking. For example: Tom and Ann are talking in a cafe. Tom says:

TOM: I'm reading an interesting book at the moment. IT lend it to you when I've finished it.

Tom is not reading the book at the time of speaking. He means that he has started it but not finished it yet. He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

1. Catherine wants to work in Italy, so she is learning Italian. (but perhaps she isn't learning Italian exactly at the time of speaking)
2. Some friends of mine are building their own house. They hope it will be finished before next summer.

We use the present continuous when we talk about things happening in a period around now (for example, today/this week/this evening etc.):

1. 'You're working hard today.' 'Yes, I have a lot to do.' (not 'you work hard today')
2. 'Is Susan working this week?' 'No, she's on holiday.'

We use the present continuous when we talk about changes happening around now:

1. The population of the world is rising very fast. (not 'rises')
2. Is your English getting better? (not 'does your English get better')

Past Continuous

We use the past continuous to say that somebody was in the middle of doing something at a certain time. The action or situation had already started before this time but had not finished:

1. This time last year I was living in Brazil.

2. What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
3. I waved to her but she wasn't looking.

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

Past continuous (in the middle of an action)

1. I was walking home when I met Dave. (= in the middle of walking home)
2. Ann was watching television when the phone rang.

Past simple (complete action)

3. I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
4. Ann watched television a lot when she was ill last year.

Future Continuous

Future Continuous Tense is used to express an action that will be happening in the Future. It expresses a continued or ongoing action that may or may not be completed in the Future. Future Continuous Tense is also called Future progressive tense.

For example if a person says, "Steve will be going to the park". It means that Steve will be going in the Future and he may or may not be still working in the office (Task may be completed). Actions are like this can be expressed using Future continuous tense.

Future Continuous Tense is made up of two main parts auxiliary verb will + be and base form+ ing.

Future Continuous Tense=Subject + [will + be] (Auxiliary Verb) +1ST Verb+ Ing+ Object

In positive sentences, we simply make the sentences according to Future Continuous Tense rules.

For Example

1. I will be doing his complete project.
2. He will be improving his performance for sure.
3. You will be selling pizza in the next morning.
4. George will be leaving our house at 4 p.m.

Negative Simple Future tense = Subject+ will (Auxiliary Verb) + not + be (Auxiliary Verb) + 1ST Verb+ ing +Object

For example

1. He will not be playing basketball.
2. They will not be coming with us to the school.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the sentences in the Present Continuous Tense.

1. I/play/tennis/with/my/friend/now.
2. We/walk/on/the/ beach/now.
3. They/have/a/great/time/at/the/camp/at/the/ moment.
4. Angela/paint/a/beautiful/picture/now.
5. Tina/ and/Pam/stay/in/a/five-star/hotel.
6. It/rain/outdoors/at/the/ moment.
7. Bobby/prepare/for/the/test/in/his/room.
8. The/ dog/bark/at/some/strangers.
9. The/water/in/the/kettle/boil.
10. Somebody/knock/at/the/door.
11. The/children/still/sleep.
12. You/watch/the/sunset/now.
13. The/girls/choose/the/ costumes/for/the/party.
14. We/wait/for/the/bus/at/the/ bus-stop.
15. A/little/girl/cry.

Ex.2. Make up sentences, pay attention on a sample.

Example: Tim isn't reading now. (to sleep) + Tim isn't reading now. He is sleeping. Colin and Den are playing now. (to work) — Colin and Den are playing now. They aren't working.

1. Pupils aren't writing a dictation now. (to translate the text) +
2. Margaret is washing the dishes, (to sweep the floor) —
3. The days are getting shorter, (to get longer) —
4. My Granny isn't reading a magazine, (to watch TV) +
5. My friend and me are sunbathing, (to swim) —
6. The kitten isn't sleeping, (to play) +
7. Greg and his boss aren't having lunch, (to read a report) +
8. Cliff and Julia are preparing for the test, (to dance at the disco) —
9. My father isn't washing his car. (to dig in the garden) +
10. I'm not learning a poem now. (to write an essay) +
11. You are skating now. (to play snowballs) —
12. I'm drinking tea now. (to drink coffee) —
13. My father and me aren't listening to music now. (to listen to news) +

Ex.3. Put the verb in brackets in the sentence using the present simple or present continuous.

1. Everybody (know) _____ that the world's rainforests (disappear)
2. Although rainforests (cover) _____ only six per cent of the Earth's land surface, they (contain) _____ about 50% of all species of life on the planet.
3. They also (remove) _____ carbon dioxide (CO₂) from the air and (produce) _____ oxygen (O₂).

4. As they are important, why (they / vanish) _____?
5. Most scientists (agree) _____ that there are two main reasons.
6. First of all, the way of life in these forests (change) _____ .
7. In some forests, big companies (cut) _____down more and more trees (deforestation) and (cause) _____ damage to the land.
8. In other places, another kind of deforestation (happen) _____.
9. Here farmers (bum) _____ more and more of the forest and (use) _____ the land to feed cattle.
10. Now that governments (understand) _____ the problem, they (begin) _____ to control these activities.

Ex.4. Put the verb in brackets in the sentence using the Past Continuous.

1. Around me people (to talk) Russian, Italian and English.
2. Arnold (to talk) to some of the other guests on the terrace when Hardy came.
3. Alex (to look) at his watch.
4. All night long the stars (to glitter).
5. Elizabeth (to eat) and didn't raise her head.
6. He drank some of the wine and ate several chunks of bread while he (to wait) for his dinner to come up.
7. The family (to prepare) for the party.
8. She (to argue) that only Belinda knew how to treat men.
9. A few minutes later Edward (to hurry) through the streets to his bus stop.
10. They moved across the room, which (to start) to fill up, to a vacant corner.

Ex.5. Put the verb in brackets in the sentence using Past Continuous (все предложения относятся к прошлому).

1. They (to write) the test at this time yesterday.
2. He (to work) in the garden from six till nine o'clock.
3. We (to watch) television the whole evening.
4. You (to play) chess at six o'clock?
5. You (to drink) tea at seven o'clock?
6. He (to draw) from three till five o'clock?
7. Who (to listen) to the radio at this time?
8. It (to rain) the whole day yesterday?
9. They (to skate) at five o'clock?
10. She (not to help) mother about the house from two till seven.

Ex.6. Underline the correct form.

- a. While he *took* / *was taking* a bath, Archimedes *discovered* / *was discovering* the principles of density and buoyancy.
- b. When Edouard Benedictus, a French scientist, *worked* / *was working* in his Laboratory, he *dropped* / *was dropping* a glass bottle which had some plastic inside - and *invented* / *was inventing* safety glass.

- c. Columbus *arrived/ was arriving* in America while he tried / was trying to reach the Far East.
- d. Alexander Fleming *discovered / was discovering* penicillin by accident while he *looked / was looking* at some old experiments.
- e. While Hiram Bingham *climbed / was climbing* in the mountains of Peru in 1911, he *discovered / was discovering* the lost city of Macchu Picchu.
- f. While Isaac Newton *sat / was sitting* under an apple tree, an apple *fell / was falling* on his head, and he *understood / was understanding* gravity.
- g. While Dr Harry Coover *tried/ was trying* to invent a new kind of plastic, he *made / was making* a very soft substance which stuck / was sticking things together. It was Superglue.
- h. While he *observed / was observing* the Moon through his telescope, Galileo *realized / was realizing* that it had mountains and craters.

Ex.7. Put the verb in brackets in the sentence using Future Continuous. Pay attention on negative and interrogative sentences.

1. We ___ (drive) towards the mountains at that moment. (Мы будем ехать по направлению к горам в тот момент.)
2. This time next week Rosie ___ (fly) to Tokyo. (В это время на следующей неделе Розы будет лететь в Токио.)
3. You ___ (use) the Internet in half an hour? (Ты будешь пользоваться интернетом через полчаса?)
4. I ___ (not sunbathe) on the beach tomorrow at noon. (Завтра в полдень я не буду загорать на пляже.)
5. Mark ___ (stay) at the hotel until next Monday? (Марк будет жить в отеле до следующего понедельника?)
6. Tomorrow evening my parents ___ (celebrate) their 20th wedding anniversary. (Завтра вечером мои родители будут праздновать свою 20-ю годовщину свадьбы.)
7. I'm sure when you come home your mother ___ (not sleep). (Я уверен, что когда ты придешь домой, твоя мама не будет спать.)
8. Sarah ___ (wait) for your response on Friday morning. (Сара будет ждать вашего ответа в пятницу утром.)
9. Ellen ___ (make) breakfast while her husband ___ (take) a shower. (Эллен будет готовить завтрак в то время, как ее муж будет принимать душ.)
10. Andy ___ (sing) a new song at the party tonight? (Энди будет петь новую песню сегодня на вечеринке?)

Ex.8. Check out Michael's plan for the next week.

Write what he will or will not do using the verbs in Future Continuous.

Monday, 10 a.m. – to drive my wife to the airport (отвезти жену в аэропорт)

Tuesday morning – not to sleep till late (не спать допоздна)

Wednesday, 2 p.m. – to take the dog to the vet (отвезти собаку к ветеринару)

Thursday, 6 p.m. – to play rugby with my brothers (поиграть в рэгби со своими братьями)

Friday, 8 p.m. – to watch the football championship, not to drink any beer (посмотреть чемпионат по футболу, не пить пива)

Saturday afternoon – to tidy the house (навести в доме порядок)

Sunday evening – to meet my wife at the train station (встретить жену на железнодорожном вокзале)

Ex.9. Put the verbs into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. I saw (see) Sue in town yesterday but she ____ (look) the other way.
2. I ____ (meet) Tom and Ann at the airport a few weeks ago. They ____ (go) to Berlin and I ____ (go) to Madrid. We ____ (have) a chat while we ____ (wait) for our flights.
3. I ____ (cycle) home yesterday when suddenly a man ____ (step) out into the road in front of me. I ____ (go) quite fast but luckily I ____ (manage) to stop in time and ____ (not/hit) him.

Ex.10. Put the verbs into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Jane ***was waiting*** (wait) for me when I ***arrived*** (arrive).
2. 'What ____ (you/do) this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'
3. '____ (you/go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'
4. 'Was Carol at the party last night?' 'Yes, she ____ (wear) a really nice dress.'
5. How fast ____ (you/drive) when the accident ____ (happen)?
6. John ____ (take) a photograph of me while I ____ (not/look).
7. We were in a very difficult position. We ____ (not/know) what to do.
8. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last ____ (see) him, he ____ (try) to find a job in London.
9. I ____ (walk) along the street when suddenly I ____ (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody ____ (follow) me. I was frightened and I ____ (start) to run.
10. When I was young, I ____ (want) to be a bus driver.

10. PERFECT TENSES (PRESENT PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT)

Present Perfect

When we use the present perfect there is always a connection with now. The action in the past has a result now:

1. 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I've lost it.' (I haven't got it now)
2. He told me his name but I've forgotten it. (I can't remember it now)
3. 'Is Sally here?' 'No, she's gone out.' (she is out now)
4. I can't find my bag. Have you seen it? (do you know where it is now?)

We often use the present perfect to give new information or to announce a recent happening:

1. Ow! I've cut my finger.
2. The road is closed. There's been (= there has been) an accident.
3. (from the news) The police have arrested two men in connection with the robbery.

You can use the present perfect with just, already and yet:

Just = a short time ago:

1. 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I've just had lunch.'
2. Hello. Have you just arrived?

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected (see also Unit 110D).

1. 'Don't forget to post the letter, will you?' 'I've already posted it.'
2. 'What time is Mark leaving?' 'He's already gone.'

Past Perfect

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

1. Sarah arrived at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened before this time, we use the past perfect (had ...):

1. When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

Some more examples:

1. When we got home last night, we found that somebody had broken into the flat.
2. Karen didn't want to come to the cinema with us because she had already seen the film.
3. At first I thought I'd done the right thing, but I soon realised that I'd made a serious mistake.
4. The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He hadn't flown before./He had never flown before.

Had done (past perfect) is the past of have done (present perfect). Compare:
present perfect

1. Who is that woman? I've never seen her before.
2. We aren't hungry. We've just had lunch.
3. The house is dirty. They haven't cleaned it for weeks.

past perfect

4. I didn't know who she was. I'd never seen her before. (= before that time)
5. We weren't hungry. We'd just had lunch.
6. The house was dirty. They hadn't cleaned it for weeks.

Future Perfect

Future perfect tense is used to express any action that will be completed before any action occurs in the future. Grammatically, Future perfect tense is composed of two main parts: Auxiliary verb (will have) and 3rd form of verb.

Future Perfect Tense= Subject + will have (Auxiliary Verb) + 3rd form of verb + Object.

In positive sentences, we simply make the sentences according to Future Perfect Tense rules.

For Example

1. I will have finished my task by Sunday.
2. She will have completed her job before the deadline

When we make negative sentences, we normally use not in between auxiliary verbs.

Negative Future Perfect Tense = Subject+ will + not +have + 3rd form of verb +Object

For example

1. I will not have seen her before summer vacation.
2. We will not have decorated his home before they come.

If any action has completed before something happens in the future then to express these actions we use future perfect tense.

For example

1. I will have viewed you profile by the time you log in.
2. She will have left the school by next month.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Present Perfect form. The sentences can be affirmative, negative or interrogative.

H-p: I never... (be) to Australia. – I have never been to Australia. (Я никогда не был в Австралии.)

He... (pass) the exam? – Has he passed the exam? (Он сдал экзамен?)

We just___ (meet) an American actor. (Мы только что встретили американского актера.) Your husband___ (sell) the house? (Твой муж продал дом?) I___ (not start) my new job yet. (Я еще не начала свою новую работу.) You___ (be) to New York before? (Вы были в Нью-Йорке раньше?) Ann___ (not choose) the dessert yet. (Аня еще не выбрала десерт.) They___ (do) the shopping today. (Они сделали покупки сегодня.) Tom___ ever (visit) Disneyland? (Том когда-либо посещал Диснейленд?) I just___ (see) a horror film. (Я только что посмотрела фильм ужасов.) She___ (not find) her coat. (Она не нашла свое пальто.) The cat already___ (eat up) the fish. (Кошка уже доела рыбу.)

Ex.2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. I (to be) to their concert twice. Their music is amazing. 2. I (not/to see) Jane since the day of her wedding. They (to come back) from their honey moon yet? 3. —Where is your ID Card? —I (to lose) it. They are going to make me another one. 4. Oh, look! It's Sarah. I (not/to see) her for a long time. 5. Jane is on holiday. She (to go) to Ireland. 6. —Are you going to the medical center? —I (already/to be) there today. 7. I am waiting for a very important letter. It (not/to arrive) yet? 8. My father (to start) a new job recently. He is very busy now. I (not/talk) to him for a long time already.

Ex.3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. You (to hear) from Melisa recently? — No, she (to go) to China for a seminar and (not/come back) yet. 2. It was a great weekend. I (to meet) lots of people for the last few days. 3. It is the first time I (to swim) in the ocean. I (never/do) this before. 4. You (ever\try) Indian or Chinese food? 5. I have been very busy with the project recently. So I (not/seen) any of my friends for a long time. 6. You (ever/to speak) to a famous person in your life? 7. What is the most beautiful place you (ever/to see)? 8. I (to give up) smoking last year. I (not\to smoke) since then.

Ex.4. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

Hello, Josh. I hope you are enjoying your holidays in America. Everything is fine at home. Molly **1.** (to receive) the exam results from school recently. She **2.**(to get) the highest possible point among all the children. Aunt Franny **3.**(to sell) her old car and **4.** (already/to buy) a new one. Mother **5.**(already/to plan) our next weekend holidays. We are going for a barbeque party. Father **6.** (to be) to Paris twice since the time you left. He has so much to tell you. And I **7.** (to get) a confirmation letter about my internship in the law firm. So everything is good. Come home. We miss you.

Ex.5. Read these sentences about fish. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Present Perfect.

1. About 15% of protein eaten by humans (always come) has always come from fish?
2. Recently, however, the number of fish (fall) _____.
3. Several things (cause) _____ this problem.
4. Most scientists agree that governments (not do) _____ enough to stop overfishing.
5. This means that fish populations (grow) _____ smaller.
6. Many fish (not reproduce) _____ fast enough to replace their numbers.
7. The population of North Sea cod, for example, (reach) a dangerous level.
8. EU laws (reduce) _____ the numbers of fishing boats.
9. As a result, many fishermen in traditional fishing ports (lose) _____ their jobs.
10. In recent years, fish in the UK (become) _____ expensive, and many people (stop) _____ eating it.

Ex.6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Past Perfect Tense.

1. He never _____ (be) to Oxford before. (Он никогда раньше не был в Оксфорде.)
2. When I found my camera the butterfly already _____ (fly away). (Когда я нашел фотоаппарат, бабочка уже улетела.)
3. Sandra _____ (suffer) from pneumonia for many years. (Сандра страдала от пневмонии в течение многих лет.)
4. Tony _____ (not appear) on TV before that. (Тони никогда раньше не появлялся на ТВ.)
5. My cousin _____ (buy) the tickets before we came. (Мой кузен купил билеты до того, как мы пришли.)
6. I was too tired because my working day _____ (start) at six. (Я слишком устал, потому что мой рабочий день начался в шесть.)

Ex.7. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Past Simple or Past Perfect.

H-p: When my mum _____ (appear), my father already _____ (start) the car. – When my mum appeared, my father had already started the car. (Когда мама появилась, мой папа уже завел машину.)

1. When the police _____ (arrive), we already _____ (catch) the thief.
2. Jack _____ (finish) the test before the bell _____ (ring).
3. When Anna _____ (come) to say good-night, her children already _____ (fall asleep).
4. Scott already _____ (prepare) the dinner when her husband _____ (get) home from work.
5. When Brad and Susan _____ (get married), they _____ (know) each other for 3 years.
6. She _____ (not enjoy) the film because she _____ (read) the book before.
7. Our apartment _____ (be) in a mess because I _____ (have) a birthday party the night before.
8. We _____ (not go) to a restaurant because we _____ (spend) all our money on clothes.
9. Mary _____ (can't go) skating after she _____ (break) her leg.
10. Larry _____ (be late) because he _____ (get stuck) in a traffic jam.

Ex.8. Read the following information about famous moments in history. Then underline the correct form. Only one verb in each paragraph is past perfect.

A. Columbus left Spain in August 1492 with three ships, to try and find a way to India by sailing west instead of east. When his ships **a) *finally reached/ had finally reached*** land on 12 October, he thought he was there, but the ships **b) *actually arrived/ had actually arrived*** in America instead.

B. Captain Robert Scott wanted to reach the South Pole first. He and his companions finally arrived there on 1 January 1912 after a terrible journey across the ice, but **c) *found / had found*** a Norwegian flag. Unfortunately for Scott, Roald Amundsen **d) *got/ had got*** there on 14 December, 18 days earlier.

C. Leonardo painted his famous The Last Supper between 1495 and 1498, but the painting started to deteriorate within 50 years. The most common explanation for this used to be that Leonardo **e) *used/ had used*** the wrong kind of paint, but

experts have always disagreed about this, and many believe that the damp in the wall is the cause of the damage. Between 1978 and 1999, experts **f) restored/ had restored** the painting, and the public can now see it again.

Ex.9. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Future Perfect Tense. Pay attention to negative and interrogative sentences.

1. By the end of the spring we ___ (do) five exams. (К концу весны мы сдадим пять экзаменов.)
2. You ___ (eat) something by the time the bus arrives? (Ты съешь что-нибудь к тому времени, когда придет автобус?)
3. By the time he is 30 years old he ___ (make) his first million of dollars. (К тому времени, когда ему исполнится 30 лет, он сколотит свой первый миллион долларов.)
4. Our plane ___ (not land) by 9 o'clock. (Наш самолет не приземлится к 9 часам.)
5. Your favourite programme already ___ (start) by the time we come home. (Твоя любимая программа уже начнется к тому времени, когда мы придем домой.)
6. I'm afraid Max ___ (not receive) my parcel by Christmas. (Боюсь, что Макс не получит мою посылку к Рождеству.)
7. They ___ (write down) all the exercises by the end of the lesson? (Они напишут все упражнения к концу урока?)
8. Next year Brad and Angelina ___ (be married) for 25 years. (В следующем году Брэд и Анджелина будут женаты в течение 25 лет.)
9. I think she ___ (not finish) her essay by Wednesday. (Думаю, она не закончит свое эссе к среде.)
10. The workers ___ (build) the swimming-pool by next autumn? (Построят ли рабочие плавательный бассейн к следующей осени?)

Ex.10. Jessica dreams about a great future. See what she dreams about and write sentences using the verbs in Future Perfect Tense.

Например: By the next week I will have bought a new bicycle. (К следующей неделе я куплю новый велосипед.)

1. When I'm 25 years old – to open a Ballet School
2. Next year – to start learning French
3. In 2050 – to travel the world
4. When I get married – to graduate from the university
5. At the end of this year – to learn figure-skating
6. In December – to visit my aunt in Australia
7. When I'm 40 years old – to have three children
8. Next summer – to finish my book of poems.

11. Perfect continuous tenses (Present perfect continuous, past perfect continuous, future perfect continuous)

Present Perfect Continuous

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. There is a connection with now:

1. You're out of breath. Have you been running? (you're out of breath now)
2. Paul is very tired. He's been working very hard. (he's tired now)
3. Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?
4. I've been talking to Carol about the problem and she thinks that ...

It has been raining for two hours. Study this example situation:

It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

1. How long has it been raining?
2. It has been raining for two hours.

We often use the present perfect continuous in this way, especially with how long, for ... and since ... The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

1. How long have you been learning English? (you're still learning English)
2. Tim is still watching television. He's been watching television all day.
3. Where have you been? I've been looking for you for the last half hour.
4. George hasn't been feeling well recently.

Past Perfect Continuous

Had been -ing is the past perfect continuous:

I/we/you/they had(= I'd etc.) been doing/working/playing etc.

he/she/it had (= he'd etc.) been doing/working/playing etc.

Some more examples:

1. When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. They'd been fighting.
2. I was very tired when I arrived home. I'd been working hard all day.

You can say that something had been happening for a period of time before something else happened:

1. Our game of tennis was interrupted. We'd been playing for about half an hour when it started to rain very heavily.
2. Ken gave up smoking two years ago. He'd been smoking for 30 years.

Had been -ing (past Perfect continuous) is the past of have been -ing (present perfect continuous). Compare:
present perfect continuous

1. I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (before now)
 2. He's out of breath. He has been running.
- past perfect continuous
1. At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes. (before the bus came)
 2. He was out of breath. He had been running.

Future Perfect Continuous

Future Perfect continuous Tense is made up of four main parts auxiliary verb will , auxiliary verb have auxiliary verb been and 1st form of base verb+ ing.

Future Perfect continuous Tense= Subject +will (Helping Verb) + have been (Auxiliary verb) + 1st Verb+ing+ Object.

In positive sentences, we simply make the sentences according to Future Perfect continuous Tense rules.

For Example

1. We will have been walking for two days.
2. Steve will have been doing this job.
3. I will have been playing for three hours.

When we make negative sentences, we normally use not after auxiliary verb **will** and rest of the formula will be same.

Negative Future Perfect Continuous Tense = Subject + will (Helping Verb) + not + have been (Auxiliary verb) + 1st Verb+ing+ Object.

For example

1. Mark will not have been attending his class for sure.
2. Bob will not have been working on his dance.

When you make any question that can be answered as yes or no, then you should start it with auxiliary verb followed by the subject, been and 1st form+ ing.

Yes/No Sentences = Will + Subject + have been + 1st Verb+ ing+ Object?

For example

1. Will you have been watching that serial tonight?
2. Will Leena have been washed her clothes for four hours?

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order using the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. I/to read/this book/for three days.
2. We/to play volleyball/ for twenty minutes.

3. She/to clean/the flat/for more than an hour.
4. Peter/to swim/for half an hour.
5. Anna/to speak/on the phone/for an hour now.
6. You/to wait/for a bus/for ten minutes only.
7. Nelly and Mary/to do the shopping/since early morning.
8. It/to snow/since last night.
9. Jack and his friend/ to ride bikes/for three hours now.
10. The teacher/to explain/ a grammar rule/since the beginning of the lesson.

Ex.2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. Helen ____ (to wash) the dishes for fifteen minutes.
2. My classmates ____ (to write) a dictation since the beginning of the lesson.
3. Sam ____ (to drive) a car for five hours now.
4. I ____ (to look) for information on the subject since last Friday.
5. Molly ____ (to paint) this picture for three days now.
6. The tourists ____ (to do) the sightseeing since nine o'clock.
7. You ____ (to work) as a computer programmer for more than fifteen years.
8. The wind ____ (to blow) since yesterday.
9. My grandfather ____ (to collect) coins since he was a boy.
10. Andy and Den ____ (to discuss) the plans for their winter holidays for two hours now.

Ex.3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. ____ Jenny ____ (to wait) for her flight in the airport since twelve o'clock? — No, she ____ She ____ (to wait) for her flight for forty minutes now.
2. Can I talk with you? — Sorry, I'm busy. I ____ (to look) for one important paper for more than twenty minutes now and can't find it.
3. Is Ed at home? — No, he is in the gym. He ____ (to train) since five o'clock.
4. ____ your mother ____ (to work) as a manager for ten years? — No, she ____ She ____ (to work) as a manager for eighteen years.
5. Is Philip fixing the washing-machine? — Yes, he ____ (to fix) it since nine o'clock.
6. Alison and Cindy ____ (not to paint) the walls in the room for two hours. They ____ (to work) since morning.
7. The Petersons ____ (to build) their house for three years now.
8. Is mother in the kitchen? — Yes, she ____ (to cook) since four o'clock.
9. You look tired! — Well, I ____ (to gather) strawberries for more than two hours.
10. Where is Ben? — He is in his room. He ____ (to listen) to music since afternoon.

Ex.4. Complete the sentences in the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

Example: ___ before we came from the supermarket. Liz/ to clean/the flat/for two hours. — Liz had been cleaning the flat for two hours before we came from the supermarket.

1. ___ before Tom came to the court. Helen/to play/tennis/for an hour and a half.
2. ___ before he retired. Mr. Black/to work/as a lawyer/for twenty-five years.
3. ___ when the bus arrived. We/ to wait/f or forty minutes.
4. Sheila looked tired because ___ She/to sew/a dress/for her little daughter/all day.
5. Before Jack got to level four ___ He/to play/the same game/for three hours.
6. Mike's neighbours were angry because ___ He/to listen/to loud music/for four hours/yesterday evening.
7. Everybody was very hungry because ___ They/to work/all day/without/a break for lunch.
8. ___ when suddenly the car broke down. We/ to drive/for five hours.
9. ___ before the plane landed in the airport late in the evening yesterday. They/to fly/for six hours.
10. ___ since Easter. Alex and Den/to prepare/for the exams.

Ex.5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. My sister ___ (to practice) for two months before that concert.
2. The boys ___ (to fish) for three hours before Tom caught the first fish.
3. We ___ (to discuss) that problem for more than an hour before we found the right solution.
4. Henry ___ (to wait) for half an hour before he saw his girlfriend getting off the tram.
5. Driving to the hospital was difficult as it ___ (to snow) all night.
6. Polly ___ (to study) economy since she entered university.
7. Ron's collection of coins was valuable as he ___ (to collect) them since he was a schoolboy.
8. When Sam returned home we ___ (to watch) that TV programme for a quarter of an hour already.
9. Bill's coat and mittens were wet because he ___ (to play) snowballs with his friends in the yard.
10. David was irritated because the police inspector ___ (to ask) him questions for more than an hour.

Ex.6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. It _____ (to snow) for five hours before the weather changed.
2. Betty and Jane ___ (to argue) for half an hour when their parents returned home.
3. Why did Ed miss his training yesterday? — He couldn't come because he ... (to prepare) his project all day yesterday.
4. ___ Isabel ___ (to work) as a secretary for four years before she moved to another town? — No, she ___ She ___ (to work) as a secretary just for two years.

5. ___ Pete ___ (to play) computer games all the evening last Friday? — No, he ___ He ___ (to write) an essay for two hours and then he went for a walk.
6. Jean ___ (not to wait) for our boss all the morning yesterday. She ___ (to speak) to some clients for about an hour and then she went to the bank.
7. Kevin was exhausted because he ___ (to unload) the lorry for three hours.
8. I was really happy that Ron won that competition because he ___ (to prepare) for it for half a year.
9. ___ you ___ (to save) money for a new computer for a long time? — Yes, I ___. I ___ (not to spend) a penny for six months before I got a sufficient sum.
10. Cathy and Sue ___ (to tidy) our cottage house for two days after that birthday party.

Ex.7. Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order using the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. By the beginning of April/my father/to work as the General Manager of this corporation/for fifteen years.
2. By 8 o'clock/we/ to surf the Net/for five hours.
3. By the end of next month/we/ to live/in this city/for ten years.
4. By the end of this day/Dolly/ not to design/this fancy dress/for seven hours.
5. Ted/to work/ as an attorney/for twenty years/by the end of March?
6. Jack and Alison/to build/their house/for a year by Easter?
7. My parents/ to run/this cafe/for six years/by next September.
8. By 4 o'clock/ they/to play volleyball/for three hours.
9. By 3 o'clock/the students/to write/the test for two hours and a half.
10. By next Friday/Henry/to train/for the competition/for ten months.

Ex.8. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. By the 25th of December she _____ (to work) on this project for six months.
2. By Saturday, Fred _____ (to paint) this picture for two weeks.
3. We _____ (to study) marketing for a year by the end of the academic year.
4. By tomorrow morning Laura _____ (to sleep) for twelve hours.
5. ___they ___(to work) together for ten years by the end of May? — Yes, they ___.
6. _____ Nick _____ (to train) for four hours by 6 o'clock? — No, he _____ .
7. By 5 o'clock Jessica _____ (to sit) at the dentist's for three hours.
8. By 12 o'clock the children _____ (to swim) for two hours.
9. By the end of the day the workers _____ (to paint) this house for nine hours.
10. By 6 o'clock in the evening we _____ (to wait) for his message for five hours.

Ex.9. Choose the correct variant.

1. By 6 o'clock Jimmy *will be playing/will have been playing* computer games for four hours.
2. At 3 o'clock tomorrow we *will be watching/will have watched* a film.
3. *Will you be shopping/ will you have been shopping* a bit later today? Can you buy me a bottle of milk?

4. By the beginning of February I ***will have attended/will have been attending*** computer courses for four months.
5. Don't call Henry. I ***will have seen/will be seeing*** him in the office later, so I'll tell him about the seminar.
6. This time next week they ***will be cruising/will have been cruising*** round South America.
7. The postman ***will be delivering/will have delivered*** all the newspapers by 4 o'clock.
8. By the end of next month Mrs Wilson ***will have taught /will have been teaching*** for thirty years.
9. ***Will you be using/will you have been using*** the printer for long? I need to print the article.
10. By 5 o'clock tomorrow Fred ***will be receiving/will have received*** your telegram.

Ex.10. Put the verb into the present continuous (I am -ing etc.) or present perfect continuous (I have been -ing etc.).

1. Maria ***has been learning*** (learn) English for two years.
2. Hello, Tom. I _____ (look) for you all morning. Where have you been?
3. Why _____ (you/took) at me like that? Stop it!
4. We always go to Ireland for our holidays. We _____ (go) there for years.
5. I _____ (think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
6. 'Is Ann on holiday this week?' 'No, she _____ (work).'
7. Sarah is very tired. She _____ (work) very hard recently.

12. MODAL VERBS

We use can to say that something is possible or that somebody has the ability to do something.

1. We use can + infinitive (can do/can see etc.):
2. We can see the lake from our bedroom window.
3. Can you speak any foreign languages?

(Be) able to ... is possible instead of can, but can is more usual:

1. Are you able to speak any foreign languages?

Could and was able to...

Sometimes could is the past of can. We use could especially with:
see hear smell taste feel remember understand

1. When we went into the house, we could smell burning.
2. She spoke in a very low voice, but I could understand what she said.

Compare could (do) and could have (done):

1. I'm so tired. I could sleep for a week. (now)
2. I was so tired. I could have slept for a week. (past)

We use must to say that we feel sure something is true:

1. You've been travelling all day. You must be tired. (Travelling is tiring and you've been travelling all day, so you must be tired.)
2. 'Jim is a hard worker.' 'Jim? A hard worker? You must be joking. He's very lazy.'

We use may or might to say that something is a possibility. Usually you can use may or might you can say:

1. It may be true. or It might be true. (= perhaps it is true)
2. She might know. or She may know.

We use may and might to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

1. I haven't decided yet where to spend my holidays. I may go to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go to Ireland)
2. Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It might rain later. (= perhaps it will rain)
3. The bus doesn't always come on time. We might have to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

You should do something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do. You can use should to give advice or to give an opinion:

1. You look tired. You should go to bed.
2. The government should do more to help homeless people.
3. 'Should we invite Susan to the party?' 'Yes, I think we should.'

We also use should when something is not right or what we expect. For example:

1. I wonder where Liz is. She should be here by now. (= she isn't here yet, and this is not normal)
2. The price on this packet is wrong. It should be L1.20, not L1.50.

Ought to ...

You can use ought to instead of should in the sentences on this page. Note that we say 'ought to do...' (with to):

1. Do you think I ought to apply for this job? (= Do you think I should apply ...?)
2. Jack ought not to go to bed so late. (= Jack shouldn't go ...)
3. It was a great party last night. You ought to have come.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Put the necessary modal verb.

1. _____ we leave him alone? — Мы могли бы оставить его одного?
2. _____ I do it now? — Я должен сделать это сейчас?
3. _____ I Oix my car? — Мне следует чинить свою машину?

4. You _____ not give him the knife. — Ты не должна давать ему нож.
5. _____ you sing? — Ты умеешь петь?
6. She _____ not go home alone. — Она не должна идти домой одна.
7. _____ I do it? — Мне нужно это сделать?
8. I _____ not swim. — Я не умел плавать.
9. We not _____ buy a new house. — Нам не нужно покупать новый дом.
10. You _____ not leave him alone. — Тебе нельзя оставлять его одного.

Ex.2. Read the situations and use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.

1. We went to their house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out) They must have gone out.
2. Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
She can't have got my message.
3. The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / very expensive)
_____ .
4. I haven't seen our neighbours for ages. (they / go away)
_____ .
5. I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)
_____ .
6. Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / easy for her)
_____ .
7. There was a man standing outside the cafe. (he / wait / for somebody)
_____ .
8. Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said) _____ .
9. When I got back to my car, the door was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
_____ .
10. I was woken up in the night by the noise next door. (my neighbours / have / a party) _____ .
11. The light was red, but the car didn't stop. (the driver / see / the red light).
_____ .

Ex.3. Read the situations and write sentences with should/ shouldn't . Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1. I'm feeling sick. I ate too much. I shouldn't have eaten so much.
2. That man on the motorbike isn't wearing a helmet. That's dangerous.
He should be wearing a helmet.
3. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one. We _____ .
4. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now, but the shop isn't open yet. _____ .
5. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50.
She _____ .

6. Laura told me her address, but I didn't write it down. Now I can't remember the house number. I _____.

7. I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn't my fault.

The driver in front _____.

8. I walked into a wall. I was looking behind me. I wasn't looking where I was going. _____.

Ex.4. Complete the sentences with mustn't or don't/doesn't have to.

1. I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You mustn't tell anyone.

2. Richard doesn't have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.

3. I can sleep late tomorrow morning because I _____ go to work.

4. Whatever you do, you _____ touch that switch. It's very dangerous.

5. There's a lift in the building, so we _____ climb the stairs.

6. You _____ forget what I told you. It's very important.

7. Silvia _____ get up early, but she usually does.

8. Don't make so much noise. We _____ wake the children.

9. I _____ eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet.

10. You _____ be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.

Ex.5. Put in must or can't.

1. You've been travelling all day. You must be tired.

2. That restaurant _____ be very good. It's always full of people.

3. That restaurant _____ be very good. It's always empty.

4. I'm sure I gave you the key. You _____ have it. Have you looked in your bag?

5. I often see that woman walking along this street. She _____ live near here.

6. It rained every day during their holiday, so they _____ have had a very nice time.

7. Congratulations on passing your exam. You _____ be very pleased.

8. You got here very quickly. You _____ have walked very fast.

9. Bill and Sue always stay at luxury hotels, so they _____ be short of money.

Ex.6. Complete the sentences using have to / has to / had to.

1. Bill starts work at 5 a.m. He has to get up at four. (he / get up)

2. 'I broke my arm last week'. 'Did you have to go to hospital?' (you / go)

3. There was a lot of noise from the street. _____ the window. (we / close)

4. Karen can't stay for the whole meeting. _____ early. (she / leave)

5. How old _____ to drive in your country? (you / be)

6. I don't have much time _____ soon. (I / go)

7. How is Paul enjoying his new job? _____ a lot? (he / travel)

8. 'I'm afraid I can't stay long.' 'What time _____?' (you / go)

9. 'The bus was late again.' 'How long _____?' (you / wait)

10. There was nobody to help me. I _____ everything by myself. (I / do)

Ex.7. Read the situations and write questions beginning Can ... or Could...

1. You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man standing near the door. You say to him: Could you open the door, please?
2. You phone Ann but somebody else answers. Ann isn't there. You want to leave a message for her. You say: _____
3. You are a tourist. You want to go to the station but you don't know where it is. You ask at your hotel. You say: _____
4. You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on. You say to the shop assistant: _____
5. You have a car. You have to go to the same place as John, who hasn't got a car. You want to give him a lift. You say to John: _____

Ex.8. Read the situations and write questions beginning Do you think...

1. You want to borrow your friend's camera. What do you say to him?
Do you think I could borrow your camera?
2. You are at a friend's house and you want to use her phone. What do you say?
3. You've written a letter in English. Before you send it, you want an English friend to check it. What do you ask him?
4. You want to leave work early because you have some things to do. What do you ask your boss?
5. The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down. What do you say to her?
6. You are phoning the owner of a flat which was advertised in a newspaper. You are interested in the flat and you want to come and see it today. What do you say to the owner?

Ex.9. What would you say in these situations?

1. John has come to see you in your flat. You offer him something to eat.
YOU: _____
JOHN: No, thank you. I'm not hungry.
2. You need help to change the film in your camera. You ask Ann.
You: Ann, I don't know how to change the film. _____
ANN: Sure. It's easy. All you have to do is this.
3. You're on a train. The woman next to you has finished reading her newspaper. Now you want to have a look at it. You ask her.
YOU: Excuse me _____
WOMAN: Yes, of course. I've finished with it.
4. You're on a bus. You have a seat but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
YOU: _____
MAN: Oh, that's very kind of you. Thank you very much.
5. You're the passenger in a car. Your friend is driving very fast. You ask her to slow down.
YOU: You're making me very nervous. _____

DRIVER: Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't realise I was going so fast.

6. You've finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill. You ask the waiter:

YOU: _____

WAITER: Right. I'll get it for you now.

7. A friend of yours is interested in one of your books. You invite him to borrow it.

FRIEND: This book looks very interesting.

YOU: Yes, it's very good. _____

Ex.10. Put in **had better** or **should**. Sometimes either is possible.

1. I have an appointment in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late.
2. It's a great film. You should go and see it. You'll really like it.
3. I _____ get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
4. When people are driving, they _____ keep their eyes on the road.
5. Thank you for coming to see us. You _____ come more often.
6. She'll be upset if we don't invite her to the wedding, so we _____ invite her.
7. These biscuits are delicious. You _____ try one.
8. I think everybody _____ learn a foreign language.

13. GERUND

A gerund is a noun made from a verb. To make a gerund, you add "-ing" to the verb.

For example:

In the sentence "I swim every day", the word "swim" is a verb.

In the sentence "I like swimming", the word "swimming" is a noun.

Therefore, "swimming" is a **gerund**.

Second example:

In the sentence "She reads several books a week", the word "read" is a verb.

In the sentence "Reading is important", the word "reading" is a noun.

Therefore, "reading" is a **gerund**.

More examples of gerunds: buying, fishing, running, watching, telling, and so forth.

The word "gerund" actually comes from the Latin word *gerere*, which means "do". You could say this actually makes sense: the gerund describes an *action*, something you *do*.

Gerunds are often used when actions are **real** or **completed**.

Examples:

(Note how the main underlined verb relates to real or completed actions.)

1. She stopped smoking.
2. I finished doing my homework.
3. They keep on fighting.
4. We discussed moving to Florida.
5. You recommended waiting until tomorrow.

6. He recalled falling asleep on the couch.
7. She practices playing those drums all the time.
8. John finished fixing the car.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Use the necessary verbs in gerund, translate sentences.

1. Do you enjoy _____ to the cinema?
2. His wife doesn't mind _____ up.
3. I can't stand _____ on weekends.
4. Everyone can improve his pronunciation by _____ aloud every day.
5. Is your brother going to give up _____?
6. Mary suggested _____ an ice-cream.
7. Don't put off _____ a composition till the end of the week.
8. The pupils expressed great surprise at _____ it.
9. We don't remember _____ her any money.
10. Please, stop _____, there's nothing to laugh at.
11. The doctor told Jack to avoid _____ in the sun.
12. My friend prefers _____ in the south.
13. Their father goes _____ every month.
14. He tried _____ an aspirin but it didn't help.
15. I have no hope of _____ you soon.
16. When we finish _____ our lunch, we'll go shopping.
17. The little child began _____.
18. This book is worth _____.
19. Do you mind my _____ the door?
20. I insisted on their _____ with us.

Ex.2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, gerund or infinitive.

1. I am planning ____ (to visit/visiting) my granny next week. (Я планирую навестить бабулю на следующей неделе.)
2. When they finish ____ (to eat/eating) their lunch, they'll go to the office. (Когда они закончат обедать, они отправятся в офис.)
3. He suggested ____ (to buy/buying) some food. (Он предложил купить немного продуктов.)
4. Does Sally enjoy ____ (to go/going) to the gym? (Сэлли нравится ходить в тренажерный зал?)
5. Don't put off ____ (to write/writing) a report till the end of the month. (Не откладывай написание доклада до конца месяца.)
6. John refused ____ (to answer/answering) my question. (Джон отказался отвечать на мой вопрос.)
7. My brother intends ____ (to get/getting) married soon. (Мой брат намеревается скоро жениться.)

8. I think she didn't mean ____ (to hurt/hurting) you. (Думаю, она не хотела обидеть тебя.)
9. Keep ____ (to beat/beating) the eggs. (Продолжай взбивать яйца.)
10. Fred can't afford ____ (to travel/travelling) this year. (Фред не может себе позволить в этом году путешествовать.)
11. We expect ____ (to leave/leaving) tomorrow. (Мы собираемся уехать завтра.)
12. Mary decided ____ (to fly/flying) to Venice. (Мэри решила полететь в Венецию.)
13. The sportsmen hope ____ (to get/getting) the best results. (Спортсмены надеются добиться лучших результатов.)
14. Are you going to give up ____ (to smoke/smoking)? (Ты собираешься бросать курить?)
15. They don't want ____ (to have/having) any more children. (Они больше не хотят иметь детей.)
16. I don't mind ____ (to wash up/washing up). (Я не против того, чтобы помыть посуду.)
17. Girls, stop ____ (to giggle/giggling). (Девочки, перестаньте хихикать.)
18. Ben likes ____ (to play/playing) chess. (Бен любит играть в шахматы.)
19. Lara goes ____ (to dance/dancing) every weekend. (Лара ходит на танцы каждые выходные.)
20. Harry can't stand ____ (to work/working) on Saturdays. (Гарри не выносит работы по субботам.)

Ex.3. Choose an infinitive with to or without to.

1. We can ____ (speak/to speak) Spanish. (Мы умеем говорить по-испански.)
2. He often makes me ____ (feel/to feel) guilty. (Он часто заставляет меня чувствовать виноватой.)
3. You have ____ (be/to be) friendly and polite. (Ты должен быть дружелюбным и вежливым.)
4. She must ____ (stay/to stay). (Она обязана остаться.)
5. The lawyer will ____ (call/to call) you later. (Юрист позвонит вам позже.)
6. I'd like ____ (send/to send) him a present. (Я бы хотела послать ему подарок.)
7. You'd better ____ (move/to move) faster. (Тебе лучше двигаться быстрее.)
8. We heard somebody ____ (enter/to enter) the apartment. (Мы слышали, как кто-то вошел в квартиру.)
9. Mother wants ____ (paint/to paint) the walls in the kitchen. (Мама хочет покрасить стены на кухне.)
10. We decided ____ (sell/to sell) the car. (Мы решили продать машину.)
11. He always fails ____ (keep/to keep) his word. (Он всегда не сдерживает слово.)
12. I am trying ____ (lift/to lift) this heavy stone. (Я пытаюсь поднять этот тяжелый камень.)
13. Let me ____ (give/to give) you some advice. (Позволь мне дать тебе совет.)
14. It may ____ (cost/to cost) too much. (Это может стоить слишком много.)

15. She saw him ____ (cross/to cross) the street. (Она видела, как он переходит улицу.)

Ex.4. Make sentences by choosing the beginning from the first column and the ending from the second.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. She is interested | a) drinking alcohol. |
| 2. I would like | b) to seeing my daughter. |
| 3. You should give up | c) being ill. |
| 4. We really enjoy | d) laughing at her. |
| 5. I'm looking forward | e) to living in a dirty house. |
| 6. He is used | f) talking to drunk people. |
| 7. She pretended | g) swimming in the sea. |
| 8. Pamela is good | h) to have a cup of coffee. |
| 9. I couldn't help | i) in surfing the Internet. |
| 10. She avoids | j) at riding a horse. |

Ex.5. Make infinitives (add "to") or gerunds (add "-ing") of the verbs in brackets to make the following sentences grammatically correct.

1. When I'm tired, I enjoy ____ television. It's relaxing. (watch)
2. It was a nice day, so we decided ____ for a walk. (go)
3. It's a nice day. Does anyone fancy ____ for a walk? (go)
4. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind ____ (wait)
5. They don't have much money. They can't afford ____ out very often. (go)
6. I wish that dog would stop ____ It's driving me mad. (bark)
7. Our neighbour threatened ____ the police if we didn't stop the noise. (call)
8. We were hungry, so I suggested ____ dinner early. (have)
9. Hurry up! I don't want to risk ____ the train. (miss)
10. I'm still looking for a job but I hope ____ something soon. (find)

Ex.6. Complete the following sentences with infinitives (add "to") or gerunds (add "-ing") of the verbs below to make them grammatically correct.

answer; apply; be; be; listen; make; see; try; use; wash; work; write.

1. He tried to avoid ____ my question.
2. Could you please stop ____ so much noise?
3. I enjoy ____ to music.
4. I considered ____ for the job but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished ____ your hair yet?
6. If you walk into the road without looking, you risk ____ knocked down.
7. Jim is 65 but he isn't going to retire yet. He wants to carry on ____ .
8. I don't mind you ____ the phone as long as you pay for all your calls.
9. Hello! Fancy ____ you here! What a surprise!
10. I've put off ____ the letter so many times. I really must do it today.
11. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody ____ so stupid?
12. Sarah gave up ____ to find a job in this country and decided to go abroad.

Ex.7. Make infinitives (with or without “to”) or gerunds (add “-ing”) of the verbs in brackets to make the following sentences grammatically correct.

1. She doesn't allow _____ in the house. (smoke)
2. I've never been to Iceland but I'd like _____ there. (go)
3. I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me _____? (do)
4. She said the letter was personal and wouldn't let me _____ it. (read)
5. We were kept at the police station for two hours and then we were allowed _____. (go)
6. Where would you recommend me _____ for my holidays? (go)
7. I wouldn't recommend _____ in that restaurant. The food is awful. (eat)
8. The film was very sad. It made me _____ (cry)
9. Carol's parents always encouraged her _____ hard at school. (study)

Ex.8. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, gerund or infinitive.

I am planning... (to visit/visiting) my granny next week. (Я планирую навестить бабулю на следующей неделе.) When they finish... (to eat/eating) their lunch, they'll go to the office. (Когда они закончат обедать, они отправятся в офис.) He suggested... (to buy/buying) some food. (Он предложил купить немного продуктов.) Does Sally enjoy... (to go/going) to the gym? (Сэлли нравится ходить в тренажерный зал?) Don't put off... (to write/writing) a report till the end of the month. (Не откладывай написание доклада до конца месяца.) John refused... (to answer/answering) my question. (Джон отказался отвечать на мой вопрос.) My brother intends... (to get/getting) married soon. (Мой брат намеревается скоро жениться.) I think she didn't mean... (to hurt/hurting) you. (Думаю, она не хотела обидеть тебя.) Keep... (to beat/beating) the eggs. (Продолжай взбивать яйца.) Fred can't afford... (to travel/travelling) this year. (Фред не может себе позволить в этом году путешествовать.) We expect... (to leave/leaving) tomorrow. (Мы собираемся уехать завтра.) Mary decided... (to fly/flying) to Venice. (Мэри решила полететь в Венецию.) The sportsmen hope... (to get/getting) the best results. (Спортсмены надеются добиться лучших результатов.) Are you going to give up... (to smoke/smoking)? (Ты собираешься бросать курить?) They don't want... (to have/having) any more children. (Они больше не хотят иметь детей.) I don't mind... (to wash up/washing up). (Я не против того, чтобы помыть посуду.) Girls, stop... (to giggle/giggling). (Девочки, перестаньте хихикать.) Ben likes... (to play/playing) chess. (Бен любит играть в шахматы.) Lara goes... (to dance/dancing) every weekend. (Лара ходит на танцы каждые выходные.) Harry can't stand... (to work/working) on Saturdays. (Гарри не выносит работы по субботам.)

Ex.9. Choose an infinitive with to or without to.

We can _____ (speak/to speak) Spanish. (Мы умеем говорить по-испански.) He often makes me _____ (feel/to feel) guilty. (Он часто заставляет меня чувствовать виноватой.) You have _____ (be/to be) friendly and polite. (Ты должен быть

дружелюбным и вежливым.) She must____ (stay/to stay). (Она обязана остаться.) The lawyer will____ (call/to call) you later. (Юрист позвонит вам позже.) I'd like____ (send/to send) him a present. (Я бы хотела послать ему подарок.) You'd better____ (move/to move) faster. (Тебе лучше двигаться быстрее.) We heard somebody____ (enter/to enter) the apartment. (Мы слышали, как кто-то вошел в квартиру.) Mother wants____ (paint/to paint) the walls in the kitchen. (Мама хочет покрасить стены на кухне.) We decided____ (sell/to sell) the car. (Мы решили продать машину.) He always fails____ (keep/to keep) his word. (Он всегда не сдерживает слово.) I am trying____ (lift/to lift) this heavy stone. (Я пытаюсь поднять этот тяжелый камень.) Let me____ (give/to give) you some advice. (Позволь мне дать тебе совет.) It may____ (cost/to cost) too much. (Это может стоить слишком много.) She saw him____ (cross/to cross) the street. (Она видела, как он переходит улицу.)

Ex.10. Make sentences by choosing the beginning from the first column and the ending from the second.

She is interested a) drinking alcohol. I would like b) to seeing my daughter. You should give up c) being ill. We really enjoy d) laughing at her. I'm looking forward e) to living in a dirty house. He is used f) talking to drunk people. She pretended g) swimming in the sea. Pamela is good h) to have a cup of coffee. I couldn't help i) in surfing the Internet. She avoids j) at riding a horse.

14. PHRASAL VERBS

We often use verbs with the following words:

in out on off up down away back round through about along over forward by

So you can say put out/get on/take off/run away etc. These verbs are phrasal verbs. We often use out/off/up etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

get on: The bus was full. We couldn't get on.

drive off: A woman got into the car and drove off.

come back: Sally is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.

turn round: When I touched him on the shoulder, he turned round.

But often the second word (out/off/up etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

break down: Sorry I'm late. The car broke down. (= the engine stopped working)

look out: Look out! There's a car coming. (= be careful)

take off: It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane took off. (= went into the air)

get up: I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get up. (= get out of bed)

get on: How was the exam? How did you get on? (= how did you do?)

get by: My French isn't very good but it's enough to get by. (= to manage)

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a preposition. For example:

1. Why did you run away from me?
2. You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
3. Are you looking forward to your holiday?

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A. *fly, look, get, sit, go, speak.*

B. *away, by, down, on, out, round, up.*

1. The bus was full. We couldn't get on.
2. I've been standing for the last two hours. I'm going to _____ for a bit.
3. A cat tried to catch the bird, but it _____ just in time.
4. We were trapped in the building. We couldn't _____.
5. I can't hear you very well. Can you _____ a little?
6. 'Do you speak German?' 'Not very well, but I can _____'.
7. Everything has got so expensive. Prices have _____ a lot.
8. I thought there was somebody behind me, but when I _____, there was nobody there.

Ex.2. Complete the sentences using a word from A and a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A: *away, back, forward, in, up.*

B: *at, through, to, with.*

1. You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
2. My holidays are nearly over. Next week I'll be _____ work.
3. We went _____ the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4. The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I'm not looking _____ it.
5. There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got _____ £50,000.
6. I love to look _____ the stars in the sky at night.
7. I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew _____ the open window.

Ex.3. Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

a candle; a cigarette; a mess; a mistake; a new product; an order.

1. turn out a light.
2. point out _____.
3. blow out _____.
4. carry out _____.
5. put out _____.
6. try out _____.
7. sort out _____.

Ex.4. Complete the sentences using one of these phrasal verbs (in the correct form):

break down

drop out (= stop taking part in something)

clear up (= become brighter-for weather)

move in (= start living in a house etc.)

close down (= go out of business)

show off (= show how clever you are)

doze off (= fall asleep)

turn up (= appear/arrive)

1. Sorry I'm late. The car **broke down** on the way here.
2. I arranged to meet Jane after work last night but she didn't _____.
3. 'We've bought a new house.' 'Oh, have you? When are you _____?'
4. There used to be a shop at the end of the street but it _____ a year ago.
5. I ran in a marathon last week but I wasn't fit enough. I _____ after 15 kilometres.
6. We all know how wonderful you are. There's no need to _____.
7. I was very tired. I sat in an armchair and _____.
8. The weather is horrible at the moment, isn't it? I hope it _____ later.

Ex.5. Complete the sentences using a word from List A and a word from List B. You need to use some words more than once.

A: *away back forward on out up,*

B: *at of to with*

1. You're walking too fast. I can't keep **up with** you.
2. My holidays are nearly over. Next week I'll be _____ work.
3. We've nearly run _____ money. We've got very little left.
4. Martin isn't very happy in his job because he doesn't get _____ his boss.
5. I love to look _____ the stars in the sky at night.
6. Are you looking _____ the party next week?
7. There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got _____ 30,000 pounds.

Ex.6. Complete the sentences using one of these verbs (in the correct form) + it/them/her/you:

cross out give away, make up, turn down (= refuse) fill in, give back, show round see off (= see somebody leave)

1. They gave me a form and told me to **fill in it.**
2. If you make a mistake on the form, just _____.
3. The story she told you wasn't true. She _____.
4. I don't like people who borrow things and don't _____.
5. Katy is going to Australia tomorrow. I'm going to the airport to _____.
6. I had a lot of books that I didn't want to keep, so I _____ to a friend.
7. Would you like to see the factory? Would you like me to _____?
8. Sue was offered a job as a translator but she _____.

Ex.7. Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (away/up etc.) with one of the following:

that box your cigarette a jacket the television a word it it them him

1. Don't throw away that box(or that away). I want to keep it. (away)
2. 'Do you want this box?' 'No, you can throw it away.' (away)
3. Shhh! The children are asleep. Don't wake them. (up)
4. We can turn it off. Nobody is watching it. (off)
5. Tom got very angry and started shouting. I tried to calm him down. (down)
6. I tried to buy in the shop but I didn't buy it. (on)
7. Please put it out. This is a no-smoking area. (out)
8. It was only a small fire. I was able to put it out quite easily. (out)
9. You can look it up in a dictionary if you don't know what it means. (up)
10. You're doing very well. Keep it up! (up)

Ex.8. Complete the sentences. Use a verb + away or back.

1. I was away all day yesterday. I got back very late.
2. I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must have gone away.
3. 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time will you be back?'
4. A man was trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he drove away.
5. I smiled at him, but he didn't look back.
6. If you cheat in the exam, you might get away with it. But you might get caught.
7. Be careful! That's an electric fence. Stay away from it.

Ex.9. Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

1. The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove away.
2. Here's the money you need. Bring me back when you can.
3. Don't throw that box away. It could be useful.
4. Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she got away with it.
5. I'm going out now. I'll be back in about an hour.
6. You should think more about the future; don't look back all the time.
7. Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and gave it all away.
8. I'll bring back to you as soon as I have the information you need.

Ex.10. Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets+ away or back.

1. A: Do you still have my keys?
B: No. Don't you remember? I gave them back to you yesterday. (give)
2. A: Do you want this magazine?
B: No, I've finished with it. You can throw it away. (throw)
3. A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
B: No, I'm going to take them back to the shop. (take)
4. A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.
B: Thanks. I'll pay you back as soon as I can. (pay)
5. A: What happened to all the books you used to have?

B: I didn't want them any more, so I _____ . (give)

6. A: Did you phone Sarah?

B: She wasn't there. I left a message asking her to _____ . (call)

15. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES TYPE I, II, III

Conditional Sentences are also known as Conditional Clauses or If Clauses. They are used to express that the action in the main clause (without *if*) can only take place if a certain condition (in the clause with *if*) is fulfilled. There are three types of Conditional Sentences.

Conditional Sentences Type I refer to the future. An action in the future will only happen if a certain condition is fulfilled by that time. We don't know for sure whether the condition actually will be fulfilled or not, but the conditions seems rather realistic – so we think it is likely to happen.

Example: If I find her address, I'll send her an invitation.

I want to send an invitation to a friend. I just have to find her address. I am quite sure, however, that I will find it.

Example: If John has the money, he will buy a Ferrari.

I know John very well and I know that he earns a lot of money and that he loves Ferraris. So I think it is very likely that sooner or later he will have the money to buy a Ferrari.

Conditional Sentences Type II refer to situations in the present. An action could happen if the present situation were different. I don't really expect the situation to change, however. I just imagine „*what would happen if ...*“

Example: If I found her address, I would send her an invitation.

I would like to send an invitation to a friend. I have looked everywhere for her address, but I cannot find it. So now I think it is rather unlikely that I will eventually find her address.

Example: If John had the money, he would buy a Ferrari.

I know John very well and I know that he doesn't have much money, but he loves Ferraris. He would like to own a Ferrari (in his dreams). But I think it is very unlikely that he will have the money to buy one in the near future.

Conditional Sentences Type III refer to situations in the past. An action could have happened in the past if a certain condition had been fulfilled. Things were different then, however. We just imagine, what would have happened if the situation had been fulfilled.

Example: If I had found her address, I would have sent her an invitation.

Sometime in the past, I wanted to send an invitation to a friend. I didn't find her address, however. So in the end I didn't send her an invitation.

Example: If John had had the money, he would have bought a Ferrari.

I knew John very well and I know that he never had much money, but he loved Ferraris. He would have loved to own a Ferrari, but he never had the money to buy one.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete the conditional sentence, determine their type by the form of the verb in the first part of the sentences.

Например: If the film is boring we ... (leave) at once. (Если фильм будет скучным, мы сразу же уйдем.) – If the film is boring we will leave at once. She would look much younger if she ... (be) slim. (Она бы выглядела намного моложе, если бы была стройной.) – She would look much younger if she were slim.

1. If the flight is delayed our guests ____ (be) late. (Если рейс задержат, наши гости опоздают.)
2. We would have gone to the beach if the rain ____ (stop). (Мы бы сходили на пляж, если бы дождь прекратился.)
3. They will miss the train if they ____ (not run.) (Они опоздают на поезд, если не побегут.)
4. If you had given her the letter she ____ (tear) it to pieces. (Если бы ты дал ей письмо, она бы разорвала его на кусочки.)
5. If Jack moves too slowly he ____ (not win) the game. (Если Джек будет двигаться слишком медленно, он не победит в игре.)
6. If I lost my job I ____ (move) to the country. (Если бы я потеряла работу, я бы переехала в сельскую местность.)
7. She would invite our kids if they ____ (behave) themselves. (Она бы пригласила наших детей, если бы они вели себя хорошо.)
8. If Tom were more careful he ____ (not break) things. (Если бы Том был более внимательным, он бы не ломал вещи.)
9. If she had had a car she ____ (drive) there. (Если бы у нее была машина, она бы туда доехала.)
10. You wouldn't have got wet if you ____ (put on) your mackintosh. (Ты бы не промок, если бы надел плащ.)

Ex.2. Make a list of dreams of little Johnny. Use the necessary verb using conditional sentence (type II). Translate the sentences.

Например: If I had much money I would buy a sports car. (Если бы у меня было много денег, я бы купил спортивную машину.)

1. If I had much moneymake a strawberry cake.
2. If I were tallbuy a sports car.
3. If I knew French wellsave people.
4. If I could cookplay basketball.
5. If I had a bunch of flowersmove to Canada.
6. If I were a firemangive it to Alice.

Ex.3. Put the verbs in brackets into the necessary form, paying attention to the type of conditional sentences.

0 тип

1. When my sister ____ (come) to town we ____ (go) to the cinema together. (Когда моя сестра приезжает в город, мы ходим вместе в кино.)
2. If my kids ____ (run) in the playground they ____ (become) very thirsty. (Если мои дети бегают на игровой площадке, они очень хотят пить.)

I тип

1. If it ____ (cost) too much I ____ (not take) it. (Если он стоит слишком много, я не возьму его.)
2. She ____ (be) angry if you ____ (lose) this photo. (Она разозлится, если ты потеряешь эту фотографию.)
3. If you ____ (not eat up) the bread we ____ (feed) the birds in the garden. (Если вы не съедите хлеб, мы покормим птиц в саду.)

II тип

1. If I ____ (have) free time now I ____ (watch) my favourite film. (Если бы у меня было свободное время сейчас, я бы посмотрел любимый фильм.)
2. If I ____ (be) you I ____ (not eat) fast food. (На твоём месте я бы не ел фаст фуд.)
3. His job ____ (be) so hard if he ____ (not have) a secretary. (Его работа была бы такой тяжелой, если бы у него не было секретаря.)

III тип

1. If you ____ (not smoke) so much you ____ (not be) in hospital now. (Если бы ты не курил столько, ты бы сейчас не лежал в больнице.)
2. If we ____ (meet) him yesterday we ____ (call) you. (Если бы мы встретили его вчера, мы бы позвонили тебе.)

Ex.4. Put the necessary verb using conditional sentence (type II). Translate the sentences.

1. If I _____ you, I _____ to the doctor.
2. If our son's wife _____ at home, he not _____ fast food.
3. If people not _____ guns, the life _____ safer.
4. If Ted _____ to Manchester, he _____ near his brother.
5. If you _____ to the gym, you _____ better.
6. If she _____ us, we _____ her.
7. If it _____, our children _____ wet.
8. If your friend _____ a driving license, he _____ this job.
9. If Steve _____ more, he _____ the exams.
10. If they _____ at home, we _____ them.

Ex.5. Put the necessary verb using conditional sentence (type II). Translate the sentences.

1. If I hadn't left my umbrella on the train, I wouldn't _____ wet.
2. If our sportsmen had won the competition, they would _____ the prize.
3. If you had spoken with your father, he _____ us some money.
4. If he had found a wallet, his life would _____.
5. If I had seen the criminal, I might _____ the police about this.

6. If she had invited him, he would _____.
7. If they had studied harder, they would _____ the last exams.
8. If you had studied English, you would _____ a better job.
9. If I had read English two years ago, I would _____ those books.
10. If your wife had been more careful, she wouldn't _____ your new car.

Ex.6. Match the beginning of each sentence in the first column with the endings in the second column. Translate the sentences.

1. You could have done much better in the exam _____.
2. If the weather had been nice _____.
3. I wouldn't have bought that book _____.
4. She would have gone to Japan last summer _____.
5. If I hadn't taken an umbrella _____.
6. That building wouldn't have fallen down _____.

- a. _____ if she had spoken Japanese quite well.
- b. _____ if it hadn't been so old.
- c. _____ if I'd known how dull it was.
- d. _____ I would have got wet.
- e. _____ we could have gone horse-riding.
- f. _____ if you had taken private lessons.

Ex.7. Put the verb in brackets into the necessary form.

1. If I _____ (save) more money, I _____ (go) to Australia.
2. If our parents _____ (not argue), we _____ (spend) the weekend together.
3. They _____ (not allow) him to enter the office if he _____ (not put on) a tie.
4. If the storm _____ (not break out), the ship _____ (not sink).
5. I _____ (take) you to the airport if I _____ (have) a car.
6. You _____ (not visit) the doctor if you _____ (not drink) cold milk.
7. She _____ (not lose) her bag if she _____ (be) more careful.
8. If the driver _____ (not take) the wrong turning, we _____ (not arrive) late.

Ex.8. Put the verb in brackets into the necessary form.

1. If he _____ (be) my friend, I _____ (invite) him to the party.
2. If I _____ (be) taller, I _____ (become) a basketball player.
3. If an asteroid _____ (hit) our planet, it _____ (cause) an ice age.
4. John _____ (travel) around the world if he _____ (win) a lottery prize.
5. We _____ (go) to Spain this winter if we _____ (have) enough money.
6. She _____ (not mind) if you _____ (borrow) her car.
7. If you _____ (move) to another city, I _____ (phone) you every day.
8. They _____ (laugh) at me if I _____ (sing) this song.
9. If we _____ (have) free time, we _____ (start) a new hobby.
10. If I _____ (know) her secret, I _____ (not tell) it to anyone.

Ex.9. Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order using conditional sentences (type II). Translate the sentences.

Н-р: the questions be so easy/ all of us pass the test. – If the questions were so easy, all of us would pass the test. (Если бы вопросы были такими легкими, мы все сдали бы тест.)

1. he be slim/ he be more attractive.
2. I pick the children up/ I am not busy.
3. you drink much wine/ you feel sleepy.
4. I am married/ I have lunch at home.
5. Peter live in a house/ he have a dog.

Ex.10. Rewrite conditional sentence type I (реальное условие) into conditional sentence type II (нереальное условие).

Н-р: If we make a fire, we will frighten away the wolves. (Если мы разожжем костер, мы спугнем волков.) – If we made a fire, we would frighten away the wolves. (Если бы мы разожгли костер, мы бы спугнули волков.)

1. If you leave the child alone, he will hurt himself.
2. We'll make nice pictures if Paola brings a camera.
3. If it snows, the kids will make a snowman.
4. I'll buy this laptop if I have enough money.
5. If our granny puts on her glasses, she will see the flowers.
6. If you are too busy, we'll leave you alone.
7. I will plant the tomatoes tomorrow if it rains.
8. If Bob finds his relatives, he will live with them.

16. PASSIVE VOICE

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

1. A lot of money was stolen in the robbery. (somebody stole it but we don't know who)
2. Is this room cleaned every day? (does somebody clean it?--it's not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use by...

1. This house was built by my grandfather.
2. Two hundred people are employed by the company.

The passive is be (is/was/have been etc.) + the past participle (done/cleaned/seen etc.):

(be) done (be) cleaned (be) seen (be) damaged (be) built etc.

Study the active and passive forms of the present simple:

Present simple

active: clean(s)/see(s) etc.

Somebody cleans this every day.

passive: am/is/are cleaned/seen etc.

This room is cleaned every day.

1. Many accidents are caused by careless driving.
2. I'm not often invited to parties.
3. How is this word pronounced?

I don't like being ...

The passive of doing/seeing etc. is being done/being seen etc. Compare:

active: I don't like people telling me what to do.

passive: I don't like being told what to do.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete these sentences with the verb in brackets using the past simple passive.

1. In ancient times, fires (light) were lit to use smoke as a signal over long distances.
2. Morse code (invent) ____ by an American called Samuel Morse.
3. The world's first television images (show) ____ to scientists in Scotland in 1926.
4. Radios (use) ____ to broadcast coded messages during the Second World War.
5. The World Wide Web (design) ____ physics researchers to communicate.
6. Buying books and CDs over the Internet (make) ____ company Amazon.
7. The first mobile phones with cameras (sell) ____ .
8. Vinyl albums and tapes (replace) ____ replaced by mp3.
9. The first English dictionary (wrote) ____.
10. The first mass-produced cars (introduce) ____ USA.

Ex.2. Change these sentences from Active into passive. Translate the sentences.

1. They will meet the scientists at the airport. — _____.
2. Mary baked the big cake. — _____.
3. They did not send the messenger there. — _____.
4. The fox caught the hare. — _____.
5. They will build a new stadium in this town in two years. — _____.
6. A gardener water these plants once a week. — _____.
7. The neighbour's child stole our cat. — _____.
8. They will demolish that old theatre next year. — _____.
9. Your drunken friend spoiled the party. — _____.
10. They often spell this word incorrectly. — _____.

Ex. 3. Change these sentences from Active into passive. Translate the sentences.

1. Nobody has used this room for ages.
2. We will give you the keys tomorrow.
3. Someone is interviewing Dr Johnson at the moment.
4. By the time I arrived, someone had already opened all your letters.
5. We usually talk briefly about the problems of the family at dinner time.

Ex.4. Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

1. It's a big factory. Five hundred people are employed (employ) there.
2. Did somebody clean (somebody I clean) this room yesterday?
3. Water _____ (cover) most of the earth's surface.
4. How much of the earth's surface _____ (cover) by water?
5. The park gates _____ (lock) at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
6. The letter _____ (send) a week ago and it (arrive) _____ yesterday.
7. The boat hit a rock and _____ (sink) quickly. Fortunately everybody _____ (rescue).
8. Robert's parents _____ (die) when he was very young. He and his sister _____ (bring up) by their grandparents.
9. I was born in London, but I _____ (grow up) in Canada.
10. While I was on holiday, my camera _____ (steal) from my hotel room.
11. While I was on holiday, my camera _____ (disappear) from my hotel room.
12. Why _____ (Sue I resign) from her job? Didn't she enjoy it?
13. Why _____ (Ben I fire) from his job? Did he do something wrong?
14. The company is not independent. It _____ (own) by a much larger company.
15. I saw an accident last night. Somebody _____ (call) an ambulance but nobody _____ (injure), so the ambulance _____ (not I need).
16. Where _____ (these pictures I take)? In London? _____ (you I take) them, or somebody else?
17. Sometimes it's quite noisy living here, but it's not a problem for me I _____ (not I bother) by it.

Ex.5. Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

1. It's a big factory. Five hundred people are employed (employ) there.
2. Did somebody clean (somebody / clean) this room yesterday?
3. Water _____ (cover) most of the Earth's surface.
4. Most of the Earth's surface _____ (cover) by water.
5. The park gates _____ (lock) at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
6. The letter _____ (post) a week ago and it _____ (arrive) yesterday.
7. The boat _____ (sink) quickly but fortunately everybody _____ (rescue).
8. Ron's parents _____ (die) when he was very young. He and his sister _____ (bring) up by their grandparents.

9. I was born in London but I _____ (grow) up in the north of England.
10. While I was on holiday, my camera _____ (steal) from my hotel room.
11. While I was on holiday, my camera _____ (disappear) from my hotel room.
12. Why _____ (Sue/resign) from her job? Didn't she enjoy it?
13. Why _____ (Bill/sack) from his job? What did he do wrong?
14. The company is not independent. It _____ (own) by a much larger company.
15. I saw an accident last night. Somebody _____ (call) an ambulance but nobody _____ (injure) so the ambulance _____ (not/need).
16. Where _____ (these photographs/take)? In London? _____ (you/take) them?

Ex.6. Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using 'somebody/they/people' etc. write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody cleans the room every day. *The room is cleaned every day.*
2. They cancelled all flights because of fog. All _____ .
3. People don't use this road very often. _____ .
4. Somebody accused me of stealing money. I _____ .
5. How do people learn languages? How _____ .
6. People advised us not to go out alone. _____ .

Ex.7. Complete these sentences with one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

carry cause do make repair send spend wake up

Sometimes you need have ('might have', 'could have' etc.).

1. The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late.
2. I haven't received the letter. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
3. A decision will not _____ until the next meeting.
4. I told the hotel receptionist that I wanted to _____ at 6.30 the next morning.
5. Do you think that less money should _____ on armaments?
6. This road is in very bad condition. It should _____ a long time ago.
7. The injured man couldn't walk and had to _____
8. It's not certain how the fire started but it might _____ by an electrical fault.

Ex.8. Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using 'somebody' or 'they', write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody has cleaned the room.

The room has been cleaned _____ .

2. They have postponed the concert.

The _____ .

3. Somebody is using the computer at the moment.

The computer _____ .

4. I didn't realise that somebody was recording our conversation.

I didn't realise that _____ .

5. When we got to the stadium we found that they had cancelled the game.

When we got to the stadium, we found that _____ .

6. They are building a new ring road round the city.

7. They have built a new hospital near the airport.

Ex.9. Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1. There's somebody behind us. (I think/we/follow) *I think we're being followed.*

2. This room looks different. (you/paint?) *Have you painted it?*

3. My car has disappeared. (it/steal!) It _____.

4. My umbrella has disappeared. (somebody/ take) Somebody _____.

5. Tom gets a higher salary now. (he/ promote) _____.

6. Ann can't use her office at the moment. (it/ redecorate) _____.

7. The photocopier broke down yesterday, but now it's OK. (it/ work/ again; it/repair) _____.

8. The police have found the people they were looking for. (two people/arrest/last night) _____.

9. A tree was lying across the road. (it/ blow down/in the storm) _____.

10. The man next door disappeared six months ago. (nobody/ see/since then) _____.

11. I was mugged on my way home a few nights ago. (you/ ever/ mug?) _____.

Ex.10. Write these sentences in another way, beginning in the way shown.

1. They didn't give me the money. *I wasn't given the money.*

2. They asked me some difficult questions at the interview. I _____.

3. Janet's colleagues gave her a present when she retired. Janet _____.

4. Nobody told me that George was ill. I wasn't _____.

5. How much will they pay you? How much will you _____.

6. I think they should have offered Tom the job. I think Tom _____.

7. Has anybody shown you what to do? Have you _____.

17. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The rules governing verb tenses are dictated by logic; an action in the future obviously cannot happen before an action in the past. In writing, it's a matter of looking at your clauses and sentences and determining when each action is happening relative to everything else. The past must come before the present, and the present before the future, etc. Pay particular attention to the verb sequence when you have a dependent clause before an independent clause, or a result clause before the if-clause.

When an independent clause is in the past tense, any dependent clauses must also be written in the past tense, *not* the present tense or the future tense. Consider the example below for an illustration of this rule:

Incorrect - The cat was bathing because his feet are dirty.

Incorrect - The cat was bathing because his feet will be dirty.

Because the tense of the independent clause is in the past (was bathing), the verb in the dependent clause should also be in the past, as illustrated in the sentence below:

Correct -The cat was bathing because his feet were dirty.

As with many rules in English, however, there is an exception. In cases where a universal truth is conveyed, the present tense may be used after the past tense. Consider this example:

Correct -Even the early doctors knew that washing hands prevents infection.

The fact that hand washing prevents infection is a universal truth that doesn't change with time, so it can be expressed in the present tense. Of course, the rule regarding the sequence of tenses doesn't mean that the actual verbs have to be in chronological order, just the actions. We can put the dependent clause at the beginning of the sentence, as illustrated below:

Correct -Athena will continue to learn English when she gets to the States.

It's alright to have the future tense (will continue) before the present tense (gets) because the temporal conjunction (when) shows that the second action actually happens first.

A present or future tense in the main clause may be followed by any tense in the subordinate clause that is required by the sense.

He tells me he is (was/will be) a student of London University.

I know that she finishes (will finish/finished) her work at 5 p.m.

She says that she has already passed the final exams.

When the action of the subordinate clause refers to a future moment with regard to the past moment indicated in the principal clause, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the Future-in-the-past.

She hoped that she would know the truth about it.

He phoned me to tell that he would be playing tennis the whole evening.

I decided that I would have learned English before going abroad.

If there are several subordinate clauses in a sentence, the rule of sequence of tenses is observed in all of them.

She promised that she would help me if she had any free time when she came home from work.

He hoped that he would go to England as soon as he had passed his exams.

EXERCISES

Ex.1. Write these sentences in indirect speech and translate them.

1. A brother and a sister are buying food in the supermarket. — They said that a brother and a sister were buying food in the supermarket.

Говорили, что брат и сестра покупают еду в супермаркете.

2. This boy studies English.

3. A popular singer will sing his best songs the day after tomorrow.

4. Three men are talking about dogs yesterday.

5. A famous writer writes new books.

6. My friends are here in the hall.

7. Our teacher opened these books.

Ex.2. Find the sentences in which the verb in brackets can be in the present tense.

1. Our neighbour said his name (be) Fred. (Наш сосед сказал, что его зовут Фред.)

2. He said he (be) tired. (Он сказал, что устал.)

3. I thought you (call) the doctor. (Я думал, что ты вызвал врача.)

4. We met the woman who (live) next door. (Мы встретили женщину, живущую рядом.)

5. Jane said she (can't afford) to buy a new car. (Джейн сказала, что не может позволить себе покупку новой машины.)

6. She asked me how many books I (read) last month. (Она спросила меня, сколько книг я прочитал в прошлом месяце.)

7. Bob said he usually (go to bed) before midnight. (Боб сказал, что обычно ложится спать до полуночи.)

8. I wondered why Sam (leave) without saying a word. (Мне было интересно, почему Сэм ушел, не сказав ни слова.)

9. Cavendish discovered that water (consist of) hydrogen and oxygen. (Кавендиш открыл, что вода состоит из водорода и кислорода.)

10. Alice and Henry said that they (be) from Florida. (Алиса и Генри сказали, что они родом из Флориды.)

Ex.3. Choose the correct form of the verb and translate the sentences.

1. I knew that my sister _____ (have/has/had) a problem.

2. I know that my sister _____ (have/has/had) a problem.

3. I knew that my sister _____ (will have/would have/had) a problem soon.

4. He said he _____ (lived/has lived/had lived) in Moscow since 2005.

5. She asks me if the flight _____ (has been cancelled/had been cancelled/been cancelled).

6. She asked me if the flight _____ (has been cancelled/had been cancelled/was cancelled).

7. Nobody knew what _____ (will happen/would happen/happens) next.

8. Mike said that he _____ (hasn't met/didn't meet/hadn't met) Helen since they parted.
9. Kelly said that she _____ (didn't want/doesn't want/hadn't wanted) to wear her hat.
10. We didn't expect that he _____ (showed/will show/would show) us the film.

Ex.4. Complete the sentences.

Пример: I think I know the answer.

I thought... – I thought I knew the answer.

1. He realizes he will be alone.
He realized_____
2. We hope she will be waiting for us at six o'clock.
We hoped_____
3. He proves he is the best.
He proved_____
4. She imagines she can do that.
She imagined_____
5. We understand we need more money.
We understood_____

Ex.5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я думал, что они ждут меня дома.
2. Джон был уверен, что я уехал из города.
3. Я надеялся, что он придет.
4. Мы не знали, что он говорит по-английски.

Ex.6. Write these sentences in indirect speech, look at the model.

Н-р: He said, "I work in New York." (Он сказал: "Я работаю в Нью-Йорке.") – He said that he... (He said that he worked in New York. – Он сказал, что работает в Нью-Йорке.)

She said, "I speak French." – She said that she_____ She said, "I am speaking French." She said, "I have spoken French." She said, "I spoke French." She said, "I am going to speak French." She said, "I will speak French." She said, "I can speak French." She said, "I may speak French." She said, "I have to speak French." She said, "I must speak French." She said, "I should speak French." She said, "I ought to speak French."

Ex.7. Find sentences in which the verb in brackets can be in the present tense.

1. Our neighbour said his name (be) Fred. (Наш сосед сказал, что его зовут Фред.)
2. He said he (be) tired. (Он сказал, что устал.)
3. I thought you (call) the doctor. (Я думал, что ты вызвал врача.)
4. We met the woman who (live) next door. (Мы встретили женщину, живущую рядом.)
5. Jane said she (can't afford) to buy a new car. (Джейн сказала, что не может позволить себе покупку новой машины.)
6. She asked me how many books I (read) last month.

(Она спросила меня, сколько книг я прочитал в прошлом месяце.) 7. Bob said he usually (go to bed) before midnight. (Боб сказал, что обычно ложится спать до полуночи.) 8. I wondered why Sam (leave) without saying a word. (Мне было интересно, почему Сэм ушел, не сказав ни слова.) 9. Cavendish discovered that water (consist of) hydrogen and oxygen. (Кавендиш открыл, что вода состоит из водорода и кислорода.) 10. Alice and Henry said that they (be) from Florida. (Алиса и Генри сказали, что они родом из Флориды).

Ex.8. Choose the correct form of the verb and translate the sentences.

1. I knew that my sister_____ (have/has/had) a problem. 2. I know that my sister_____ (have/has/had) a problem. 3. I knew that my sister_____ (will have/would have/had) a problem soon. 4. He said he_____ (lived/has lived/had lived) in Moscow since 2005. 5. She asks me if the flight_____ (has been cancelled/had been cancelled/been cancelled). 6. She asked me if the flight_____ (has been cancelled/had been cancelled/was cancelled). 7. Nobody knew what_____ (will happen/would happen/happens) next. 8. Mike said that he_____ (hasn't met/didn't meet/hadn't met) 9. Helen since they parted. Kelly said that she_____ (didn't want/doesn't want/hadn't wanted) to wear her hat. 10. We didn't expect that he_____ (showed/will show/would show) us the film.

Ex.9. Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. We saw that he was dancing with this girl.
2. I knew that he worked in a foreign company.
3. Mother said that uncle Tom had come to visit us several days before.
4. He asked me if I had been winning more games lately.
5. He knew that she would marry this man undoubtedly.
6. She said she was going to do some shopping.
7. Sally said she didn't like chocolate.
8. He thought that I was playing chess.
9. I didn't know that he had gone to the cinema.
10. We knew that they had been working in the garden since early morning.

Ex.10. Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. He knew that metals conduct electricity.
2. The speaker said that the peoples want peace.
3. She said we must hurry.
4. I knew that he should talk to you.
5. It was not so cold yesterday as it is now.
6. My brother told me about the book you are writing.
7. Mike said he could help us.
8. I thought I had to do everything by myself.
9. The teacher said you might come in.
10. I didn't know what I should do.

KEY TO EXERCISES

1. Article

Ex 1

a. The; b. the ; c a ; d.A ; e.a ; f. an ; g. the; h. the; i. A, a ; j. The;

Ex 2

a.B; b.C; c.A; d.C; e.A; f.C; g.C; h.B; i.C ; j.B;

Ex 3

2. **a** nice holiday ... **the** best holiday
3. **the** nearest shop ... **the** end of this street
4. **a** lovely day ... **a** cloud in **the** sky
5. to **the** internet ... **the** same problem
6. **the** most expensive hotel ... **a** cheaper hotel
7. to travel **in space** ... go to **the** moon
8. **a** star ... **a** planet ... **the** largest planet in **the** solar system

Ex 4

1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. c | 5. a | 6. b | 7. c | 8. a | 9. b | 10. b

Ex 5

1. "Is this your ... friend?" — "No, it isn't my ... friend, it is my sister".
2. I have a sister. My ... sister is a teacher. My sister's ... husband is a pilot.
3. I have no ... car.
4. She has got a terrible ... headache.
5. They have a dog and two ... cats.
6. My ... cousin says he is going to be a manager one ... day.
7. Would you like an apple?
8. This is a tree. The tree is green.
9. I can see three ... children. The children are playing in the yard.
10. I have a car. The car is white. My ... friend has no ... car.

Ex 6

1. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
2. The appetite comes with eating.
3. A good beginning makes a good ending.
4. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
5. Among the blind the one-eyed man is king.
6. Brevity is the soul of wit.
7. A cat has nine lives.
8. Charity begins at home.

9. Clothes make the man.
10. Curiosity killed the cat.

Ex 7

1. ... and **a** magazine. **The** newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put **the** magazine.
2. I saw **an** accident this morning. **A** car crashed into **a** tree. **The** driver of **the** car wasn't hurt, but **the** car was badly damaged.
3. ... **a** blue one and **a** grey one. **The** blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who **the** owner of **the** grey one is.
4. My friends live in **an** old house in **a** small village. There is **a** beautiful garden behind **the** house. I would like to have **a** garden like that.

Ex 8

2. watching TV
3. the radio
4. The television
5. had dinner
6. the same time
7. the capital
8. for breakfast
9. the ground ... the sky

Ex 9

2. **the** same thing
3. **Room 25** is on **the** second floor.
4. **The** moon goes round **the** earth every 27 days. or ... goes round **Earth** ...
5. **a** very hot day ... **the** hottest day of **the** year
6. We **had lunch** in **a** nice restaurant by **the** sea.
7. at **the** cinema
8. eat **a** good breakfast
9. on **the** wrong platform
10. **The** next train ... **from Platform 3**
11. You'll find **the** information you need at **the top of page 15**

Ex 10.

3. OK
4. **the** United States
5. **The** south of England ... **the** north
6. OK
7. **the** Channel
8. **the** Middle East
9. OK
10. **the** Swiss Alps

11. **The** UK
12. **The** Seychelles ... **the** Indian Ocean
13. OK
14. **The** river Volga ... **the** Caspian Sea

2. Auxiliary verbs

Ex 1

1. Do you remember my friend Max? — Ты помнишь моего друга Макса?
2. We will return home soon. — Мы скоро вернёмся домой.
3. He would be angry if he knew. — Он бы рассердился, если бы узнал.
4. I told him I should (would) be going. — Я ему сказал, что пойду.
5. Our father has just written a new book. — Наш отец только что написал новую книгу.
6. She has done with algebra. — Она покончила с алгеброй.
7. What are you going to be when you grow up? — Кем ты собираешься стать, когда вырастешь?
8. He has given you a diamond ring. — Он подарил тебе кольцо с бриллиантом.
9. They do not feel good. — Они чувствуют себя плохо.
10. We will have the tent up in no time. — Мы мигом установим палатку.

Ex 2

1) TO BE

1. Материя постоянно изменяется и постоянно движется.
2. Кюри работали четыре года, прежде чем открыли радий.
3. Энергия измеряется в тех же единицах, что и работа.

2) TO HAVE

1. Он рассказал ей, что случилось, и ушел.
2. Я должен буду прочитать рассказ к 10 часам.
3. Ты был когда-нибудь в Москве?

3) TO DO

1. Почему вы не приехали 9-часовым поездом?
2. Не уходите!
3. Он помогает тебе? — Да.

4) SHALL

1. Я буду уставшей после лекции.
2. Начинать ему опыт?
3. Вы должны принести все необходимые книги завтра.

5) SHOULD

1. Я сказал, что вернусь в воскресенье.
2. Если он придет, я поговорю с ним об этом.
3. Вам бы следовало измерить разность потенциалов между точками X и Y.

6) WILL

1. Мы поможем вам, если вы хотите.
2. Хорошо, я сделаю это.
3. Пожалуйста, разрешите мне взглянуть на это письмо.

7) WOULD

1. Она сказала, что они сдадут все экзамены к 21 июня.
2. Он сказал, что скоро вернется.
3. Он думал, что мы будем работать весь день.

Ex 3

1. a | 2. d | 3. c | 4. c | 5. c | 6. c | 7. b | 8. c | 9. c | 10. c

Ex 4

1. Does he seem unfriendly?
2. The typist was typing the letters when I came.
3. The agreement has just been signed by the director.
4. He will be working when his mother returns.
5. Did you go to the cinema yesterday?
6. I had finished my work before he returned.

Ex 5

- 2 doesn't; 3 was; 4 will; 5 am ... isn't; 6 should; 7 won't; 8 do; 9 could; 10 would ... could ... can't.

Ex 6

1. Bob will be ashamed.
2. My parents will be tired after work.
3. The fridge will be switched off.
4. The trucks will be too dirty.
5. Anna's cherry-pie will be delicious.
6. We will not be busy.
7. The weather won't (will not) be chilly.
8. The books will not be boring.

Ex 7

1. My daughter was an economist.
2. The mail was delivered.
3. The eggs were fresh.
4. It wasn't rainy.
5. I was at home. (Я дома.)
6. We were not ready.

Ex 8

1. My uncle is a scientist.
2. I am from Brazil.

3. The supermarket is not far from our house.
4. John wasn't hungry.
5. We are ill.
6. The children were at school.
7. The tickets will not (won't) be cheap.
8. The chairs were not wooden.
9. The keys will be on the table.
10. This T-shirt was my mum's present.

Ex 9

1. Is she thirsty?
2. Are they afraid of monkeys?
3. Were the castles very old?
4. Was Sara on holiday?
5. Will it be cloudy tomorrow?

Ex. 10.

2. I hope so.
3. I expect so.
4. I don't think so.
5. I'm afraid not.
6. I'm afraid so.
7. I suppose so.
8. I hope not.
9. I think so.

3. Pronoun

Ex 1

- a. something else; b. somebody / someone else; c. Something else;
 d. Everyone / Everybody else; e. nothing else; f. anyone / anybody else ;
 g. anyone /anybody else ; h. anything; g else isomeone / somebody else ;
 i. Someone / Somebody else;

Ex2

- a. yourself; b. yourself; c. ourselves; d. themselves; e. myself;
 f. yourself; g. himself; h. themselves; i. ourselves.

Ex3

1. Do you know the man whose house was on Oire two years ago? — Ты знаешь этого человека, чей дом два года назад горел? 2. I don't like the Oilm that you are talking about. — Мне не нравится фильм, о котором ты говоришь. 3. This is the song that (which) he has written himself. — Это песня, которую он написал сам. 4. Take the keys that open all the doors in this house. — Возьми ключи, которые открывают все двери в этом доме. 5. The guide took us to the

castle which was built 300 years ago. — Гид повёл нас к замку, который был построен 300 лет назад. 6. The thief who stole the golden chain from the shop was caught. — Вор, который украл из магазина золотую цепочку, был пойман. 7. They were ready wanted to help Flora, whose eyes were full of tears. — Они были готовы помочь Флоре, чьи глаза были полны слёз. 8. This is the author who has written many popular humorous stories. — Вот писатель, который написал много популярных юмористических рассказов. 9. We read about the professor who works abroad. — Мы читаем о профессоре, который работает за границей. 10. This is the girl that (who) my brother loved. — Это девушка, которую любил мой брат.

Ex 4

1. him | 2. myself | 3. me | 4. he | 5. he | 6. we | 7. it | 8. ourselves | 9. myself | 10. themselves

Ex 5

1. any | 2. some | 3. some | 4. any | 5. no | 6. any | 7. no | 8. any | 9. no | 10. some

Ex 6

1. She said nothing.
2. He looked at her with surprise.
3. She didn't want to go with him.
4. I asked him to pour some milk.
5. When he was 3 years old, he could dress himself.
6. Sorry, but I don't have any time.
7. What a nice picture! Is it yours?
8. Take your cup. This one is mine.
9. His opinion differs from mine.
10. Will anybody come tonight?

Ex. 7.

1. my | 2. her | 3. his | 4. their | 5. your | 6. our | 7. their | 8. their | 9. his | 10. my | 11. its | 12. your

Ex.8.

Any (У нас нет никакой туалетной бумаги.) Some (Я хочу купить немного оливкового масла для салата.) Any (В нашей машине есть немного бензина?) Any (Извини. У нас совсем нет свободного времени сейчас.) Something (Хочешь что-нибудь попить?) Anybody (В доме есть кто-нибудь?) Anything (Ты можешь пожелать все что угодно в свой день рождения.) Everybody (Все знают, что два плюс два – это четыре.) Anyone (Кто-нибудь знает название этого фильма?) Nobody (Здесь очень холодно, поэтому никто не хочет мороженого.) Somebody (Кто-то звонил тебе, пока ты был в ванной.)

Somewhere (Ваше лицо кажется мне знакомым. Я видела вас где-то раньше?)
Somewhere (Кафе закрыто. Мы можем поесть где-нибудь еще?)
Anything (Что ты будешь на десерт? – Что угодно. Мне все равно.)
Nobody (Шел дождь как из ведра. На улице никого не было.)

Ex 9

1. I help her in the shop. And she gives me some money. (Я помогаю ей в магазине. И она дает мне немного денег.)
2. We often take them for a walk. We also take a ball and our dogs like to play with it. (Мы часто берем их на прогулку. Мы также берем мяч, и наши собаки любят играть с ним.)
3. He is a doctor. (Он доктор.)
4. It is very exciting. (Она очень увлекательна.)
5. Do you know him? (Ты знаешь его?)
6. She is so beautiful! (Она такая красивая!)
7. I can't find it. (Я не могу его найти.)
8. You can join us. (Ты можешь присоединиться к нам.)
9. It is so thick and long. (Они такие густые и длинные.) (*hair – исключение.*)
10. I bought them in England. (Я купил их в Англии.)

Ex 10

1. We met Samantha. She gave us a letter for you. Take it. (Мы встретили Саманту. Она дала нам письмо для тебя. Возьми его.)
2. They are leaving for New York. I am driving them to the airport. (Они уезжают в Нью-Йорк. Я отвезу их в аэропорт.)
3. I'm calling Alex. I haven't seen him for ages. And he isn't at school. (Я звоню Алексу. Я не видел его вечность. И он отсутствует в школе.)
4. Let's go to the library with us. We need some books in Japanese. (Пойдем в библиотеку с нами. Мы ищем кое-какие книги на японском.)
5. Here is our cat Felix. It is hungry. I will feed it. (Вот наш кот Феликс. Он голоден. Я покормлю его.)

4. The Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Ex 1

- a. worse; b. cleverer; c. larger / bigger ; d. younger; e. funnier ;
f. further / farther ; g. longer ; h. warmer /hotter ; i. happier; j. better;

Ex 2

angry — much more angry — the most angry to be found; beautiful — all the more beautiful — the most beautiful to be found; cheap — a great deal cheaper — the cheapest to be found; cold — still colder — by far the coldest; diligent — much more diligent — the most diligent to be found; expensive — all the more expensive — the most expensive to be found; fast — an ever faster — the fastest

possible; generous — much more generous — the most generous to be found; good — far better — by far the best; hot — not any hotter — the hottest possible; indifferent — all the more indifferent — the most indifferent; long — a great deal longer — by far the longest; modest — all the more modest — the most modest; new — an ever newer — the newest possible; nice — a great deal nicer — the nicest possible; old — not any older — the oldest possible; practical — much more practical — by far the most practical; sad — a great deal sadder — the saddest to be found; short — still shorter — the shortest possible; sincere — all the more sincere — by far the most sincere; small — far smaller — the smallest possible; stupid — much more stupid — by far the most stupid; tall — an ever taller — the tallest possible.

Ex 3

- a. This is the most comfortable classroom I've ever sat in.
- b. This is the tastiest school lunch I've ever eaten.
- c. This is the worst book I've ever read.
- d. This is the most useful English lesson we've ever had.
- e. This is the easiest problem I've ever solved.
- f. This is the longest test I've ever taken.
- g. This is the most difficult test I've ever written.
- h. This is the most entertaining school play I've ever seen.
- i. This is the most interesting textbook we've ever used.
- j. You are the best friend I've ever had

Ex 4

3. larger
4. the smallest
5. better
6. the worst
7. the most popular
8. ... the highest mountain in the world ... It is higher than ...
9. the tallest
10. more comfortable
11. the quickest
12. quicker
13. the most expensive
14. The oldest or The eldest

Ex 5

2. hardly hear
3. hardly slept
4. hardly speak
5. hardly said
6. hardly changed

5. OK
6. slowly
7. hardly recognised

Ex 6

2. hardly any
3. hardly anything
4. hardly anybody/anyone
5. hardly ever
6. Hardly anybody/anyone
7. hardly anywhere
8. hardly or hardly ever
9. hardly any
10. hardly anything ... hardly anywhere

Ex 7.

2 badly; 3 easily; 4 patiently; 5 unexpectedly; 6 regularly.

Ex. 8.

3. selfishly; 4. terribly; 5. sudden; 6. colourfully; 7. colorful; 8. badly;
9. badly; 10. safe; 11. angrily.

Ex. 9.

2 careful; 3 continuously; 4 happily; 5 fluent; 6 specially; 7 complete;
8 perfectly; 9 nervous; 10 financially/completely

Ex .10.

2 seriously ill; 3 absolutely enormous; 4 slightly damaged; 5 unusually quiet;
6 completely changed; 7 unnecessarily long; 8 badly planned.

5. Prepositions

Ex 1

1. Are you pleased with the result? — Вы довольны результатом?
2. I was speaking to him yesterday. — Я разговаривал с ним вчера.
3. She won't even look at meat. — Она и смотреть не хочет на мясо.
4. It is outside my field. — Это не входит в мою компетенцию.
5. Put up your hand if you know the answer! — Подними руку, если знаешь ответ!
6. She put the washing out to dry. — Она развесила белье сушиться.
7. The doctor listened to his heart. — Врач прослушал его сердце.
8. I'll have to talk to that boy! — Мне придётся поговорить с этим мальчишкой!
9. They were angry at this suggestion. — Это предложение их рассердило.

10. What are you laughing at? — Над чем вы смеётесь?

Ex 2

a. to; b. at; c. to; d. to, on; e. to; f. on; g. on, on; h. to; i. in; j. in.

Ex 3

a. next; b. in; c. last; d. on; e. at; f. last; g. on; h. next; i. at; j. In.

Ex 4

To jump into the cold lake, to swim in the river, to play on the grass, to play chess, to put into the toy box, to store under the armchair, to hang on the front wall, to go to a music school, to go to technical college, to enter the university, to come to his brother's friends, to sell in the shop, to go to the south, to put at the kitchen window, to sleep on the floor, to be in the pencil-box, to fry in the big pan, to boil in the pot, to mix in the glass, to put onto the shelf, to tan on the beaches, to dive into the sea, to drop into the soup, to work in the town park, to sit on the new bank, to lie in the bed, to go by tram, to get into the car, to sit at the round table, to jump onto the table, to travel by bus, to climb onto a big oak, to rest at the seaside.

Ex 5

3. at; 4. to; 5. to; 6. into; 7. in; 8. to; 9. into; 10. to; 11. at; 12. to; 13. into; 14. to; 15. get home (no preposition) ... going to bed; 16. returned to France ... two years in Brazil; 17. born in Chicago ... moved to New York ... lives in New York.

Ex 6

1. with 2; about; 3. of; 4. of; 5. on; 6. at; 7. of; 8. to; 9. with.

Ex 7

1. for; 2. in; 3. in; 4. in; 5. out; 6. in; 7. out; 8. in; 9. in.

Ex 8

1. in; 2. for; 3. of 4. for; 5. with; 6. of; 7. in; 8. with.

Ex 9

1. of; 2. from; 3. of; 4. in; 5. about; 6. in; 7. from; 8. about.

Ex 10

1. with; 2. of; 3. About; 4. of; 5. from; 6. into; 7. to.

6. Word order

Ex 1.

1. Fred usually drives his bike out of the garage at 10 o'clock in the morning. (Фред обычно выезжает из гаража на своем байке в 10 часов утра.)

2. Lewis often takes a shower after dinner. (Миссис Льюис часто принимает душ после ужина.)
3. We seldom find a parking place near the library. (Мы редко находим место для парковки у библиотеки.)
4. I sometimes go to a night-club on Saturdays. (Иногда я хожу в ночной клуб по субботам.)
5. My parents and I sometimes fly to Australia in winter. (Мы с родителями иногда летаем в Австралию зимой.)
6. Mary always enjoys swimming in the pool very much. (Мэри всегда очень нравится плавать в бассейне.)
7. I could hardly skate last year. (Я с трудом мог кататься на коньках в прошлом году.)
8. There is a new cinema near our house. (Возле нашего дома есть новый кинотеатр.)
9. I have got some problems with my home-task. (У меня есть проблемы с домашним заданием.)
10. I don't think your sister drives very well. (Не думаю, что твоя сестра очень хорошо водит машину.)
11. My parents go to the theatre once a month. (Мои родители ходят в театр раз в месяц.)
12. Jim sold his car two years ago. (Джим продал свою машину два года назад.)
13. Cindy can't find her necklace anywhere. (Синди нигде не может найти свое ожерелье.)
14. Mike has already been to India this year. (Майк уже был в Индии в этом году.)
15. She never has lunch on weekdays. (Она никогда не обедает в будние дни.)

Ex 2.

1. I seldom watch TV.
2. It's dark outside and I am going to bed soon.
3. They are discussing something very loudly in the bedroom.
4. He was walking slowly along the river.
5. We often sing songs at the lessons.
6. I shut the door quietly and went to the bathroom immediately.
7. My uncle loves fishing very much.
8. Ann can play tennis well.
9. She is shouting at the kids all the time.
10. I will put your books on the table.
11. I don't know him well enough.
12. There are a lot of good films on TV today.
13. There is a nice fountain in the park.
14. It was very windy last Tuesday.
15. I bought these shoes in Italy.

Ex. 3.

1. it is (Не могли бы вы нам сказать, который час?)
2. our bus leaves (Ты не знаешь, когда уходит наш автобус?)
3. he is a doctor (Интересно, доктор ли он.)
4. Jane wore (Ты помнишь, во что была одета Джейн вчера?)
5. she can cook well (Ты считаешь, она умеет хорошо готовить?)

Ex. 4.

3. joe doesn't like football very much.
4. OK
5. I ate my breakfast quickly and...
6. ... a lot of people to the party?
7. OK
8. Did you go to bed late last night?
9. OK
10. I met a friend of mine on my way home.

Ex. 5.

2. We won the game easily.
3. I closed the door quietly.
4. Tanya speaks German quite well.
5. Sa m watches TV all the time.
6. Please don't ask that question again.
7. Does Kevin play football every weekend?
8. I borrowed some money from a friend of mine

Ex. 6.

1. I read this story several years ago.
2. Several hundred people live in this block of flats.
3. I know this person very well.
4. I like this fi lm very much.
5. We did not tell him about it yesterday.
6. I gave Tom this book to read.
7. They did not tell me about it.
8. He gave me these magazines yesterday.
9. A friend of mine told me about it.
10. About two thousand people work at this factory.
11. We discussed this matter with him yesterday.
12. Our teachers will take part in this work.
13. I don't know this person very well.

Ex. 7.

2. We won the game easily.
3. I closed the door quietly.

4. Diane speaks German quite well.
5. Tim watches television all the time.
6. Please don't ask that question again.
7. Does Ken play football every weekend?
8. I borrowed some money from a friend of mine.

Ex. 8.

2. I go to the bank every Friday.
3. Why did you come home so late?
4. Ann drives her car to work every day.
5. I haven't been to the cinema recently.
6. Please write your name at the top of the page.
7. I remembered her name after a few minutes.
8. We walked around the town all morning.
9. I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
10. We found some interesting books in the library.
11. Sally took the children to the zoo yesterday.
12. They are building a new hotel opposite the park.

Ex. 9.

2. We were all on holiday.
3. We were all staying at the same hotel.
4. We all enjoyed ourselves.
5. Catherine is always very generous.
6. I don't usually have to work on Saturdays.
7. Do you always watch television in the evenings?
- 8 He is also learning Italian.
- 9 That hotel is probably very expensive.
- 10 It probably costs a lot to stay there.
- 11 I can probably help you.
- 12 I probably can't help you.

Ex 10.

2. usually take
3. am usually
4. has probably gone
5. were both born
6. can also sing
7. often breaks
8. have never spoken
9. always have to wait
10. can only read
11. will probably be leaving
12. probably won't be

13. is hardly ever
14. are still living
15. would never have met
16. Yes, I always am at this time of day. (but I am always tired)

7. Simple Tenses (Present Simple, Past Simple, Future Simple)

Ex 1

1 - play, 2 – does not (=doesn't) write , 3 – Do (you) speak, 4 – does not (=doesn't) like, 5 – Does (Ann) have, 6 - works, 7 – cannot (=can't) read, 8 – Do (they) water, 9 – does not (=doesn't) ride, 10 – Does (Elizabeth) drink.

Ex 2

1 - am, 2 – is, is, 3 – Is, is, 4 – Are, are, are, 5 – Are, am, 6 – Is, is, is, 7 – Are, are, 8 – Is, is, 9 - is, 10 - are.

Ex 3

1 – She is busy, 2 – I am not busy, 3 – Are you busy?, 4 – Are they at home?, 5 – He is not at home, 6 – I don't know, 7 – Do they know?, 8 – She doesn't know, 9 – Who knows?, 10 – No one (=Nobody) knows, 11 – Does he read English books?, 12 – They never read, 13 – Does she have a flat?, 14 – He doesn't have anything (=He has nothing), 15 – Who is it?

Ex 4

a. leaves, isn't; b. loves, don't interest; c. don't study, is; d. don't dance, look; e. doesn't go, goes; f. does, doesn't crash; g. doesn't have, has; h. needs, doesn't burn; i. doesn't own, are ; j. live, don't eat.

Ex 5

a. wore; b. took; c. drank; d. went; e. made; f. meant; g. had; h. got; i. paid; j. knew.

Ex 6

a. I'll be lying; b. I'll be waiting; c. I'll be working
d. I'll be starting; e. I'll be going; f. I'll be watching
g. I'll be living; h. I'll be catching

Ex 7

1. My friends didn't fall in love with the same girl.
2. They didn't have much fun at the Christmas party.
3. It didn't rain cats and dogs this morning.
4. His parents didn't get married 30 years ago.
5. Bob didn't enjoy our jazz festival.
6. My boyfriend didn't live in Japan for 2 years and then he didn't move to Italy.
7. The waiter didn't drop the tray with glasses.

8. I didn't take a taxi from the centre to the airport.
9. The woman didn't buy a dress and a pair of shoes at the market.
10. My kids didn't go to a summer camp in August.

Ex 8

1. Did he smoke too much yesterday?
2. Was your sister born in a small village?
3. Did your neighbor visit many African countries last year?
4. Did you have frosty weather in Finland?
5. Did Harry hurt his leg on his motorbike?
6. Did the Americans land on the moon?
7. Did your aunt cook chicken and rice for lunch?
8. Did a strong wind destroy your house?
9. Was his car in the garage?

Ex 9

1. celebrated (Катя праздновала свое 20-летие в прошлую субботу.)
2. was (Погода была прекрасной.)
3. woke up (поэтому она проснулась в хорошем настроении утром.)
4. put on (Она надела красивое белое платье.)
5. saw (В зале она увидела много ярких шаров и большой именинный торт на столе.)
6. heard (Затем она услышала свою любимую музыку.)
7. entered (В этот момент все ее друзья и родные вошли в зал.)
8. congratulated (Они поздравляли ее.)
9. sang (пели песни)
10. gave (и подарили ей много подарков.)
11. felt (Катя чувствовала себя очень счастливой.)

Ex 10

1 – shall finish; 2 – won't study; 3 – will be; 4 – will help; 5 – will pass; 6 – shall go; 7 – will, help; 8 – won't meet; 9 – will go; 10 – will, buy; 11 – won't tell; 12 – will go; 13 – will go; 14 – will arrive; 15 – will buy; 16 – won't go; 17 – will look; 18 – will arrive; 19 – will begin; 20 – won't have.

Ex 11

1 – he won't order a pizza. 2 – I saw Peter in the shop yesterday. 3 – Sara likes collecting dolls. 4 – She had a birthday last Friday? 5 – This movie isn't made by Tarantino. 6 – Will not Karl go to grandmother on the weekend? 7 – Do you agree with her? 8 – I will get you a cup of coffee. 9 – He left for Berlin in 2005. 10 – We will visit grandfather tomorrow. 11 – Doesn't she song well? 12 – I will call you back. 13 – They divorced five years ago. 14 – Why don't you ask sister for help? 15 – Will you marry me? 16 – Michael lived in German last year. 17 – Do

you like reading the books? 18 –She will be at home. 19 – Who help you with cleaning the house? 20 – He called me last week.

8. Types of questions (General questions, Alternative questions, Special questions, Disjunctive questions)

Ex 1

a. is it?; b. have they?; c. will it?; d. did they ?; e. can they?; f. is it?.

Ex 2

a. weren't you? ; b. isn't it? ; c. haven't you?; d. don't they?; e. isn't she? ; f. didn't it?;

Ex 3.

1. Was Ted's advice clever? – No, it wasn't.
2. Did they have to go to school on Saturday? – Yes, they did.
3. Will he be able to speak Italian in two months? – No, he won't.
4. Are they going to meet him? – No, they aren't.
5. Must she take these pills? – No, she mustn't.
6. Will she have to write the exercise again? – No, she won't.
7. Could he swim last summer? – No, he couldn't.
8. Does she have to wear a uniform? – Yes, she does.
9. Will she be able to make sandwiches tomorrow? – Yes, she will.

Ex 4.

1. Yes, I did.
2. No, I didn't.
3. No, I can't.
4. Yes, I can.
5. Yes, it does.
6. Yes, I do.

Ex 5.

1. Is the rabbit hopping now?
2. Are children swimming now?
3. Are you reading a book now?
4. Is Dave riding his bike now?
5. Are we planting some seeds now?
6. Is she giving me a rubber now?

Ex. 6.

Did he go to school or to the cinema yesterday? Can you see my mother or my grandma? Is she sleeping or not? Can they speak German or French? Is Sonia arriving on Monday or Friday? Does he live in a house or in a flat? Is the airport big or small? How many people are there in your family — three or four? Are

there students or teachers in this class? Do you have fish or meat for dinner every day? Is there a radio or TV in the bedroom? Does your wife prefer to drive or to be driven? Have they seen that church or not? Can Tim give this book for 2 or 3 weeks? Does your father use a computer at work or at home?

Ex 7 : There are 2 teachers in this class. He works in the daytime. I like Paris. He does. He is good at Science. It is not interesting. He drinks a lot of water. Yes, it is. It is green. Yes, I do / No, I don't. He is cleaning her car. No, they are not. It is a play. Yes, I am / No, I am not. I like cats.

Ex.8.

Who usually drives carefully? Where were a lot of people last night? Whom did my uncle tell the good news? How many levels does this computer game have? Who made a big mistake? How long did they dance? Whose house are you in now? How much pizza does he eat a week? In what way will you become a millionaire? When didn't you know the capital of France? How many things are there you know about fashion? What is Cristina so excited about? Where can birds travel? Why does he turn down my help? When do producers bring together the key members of the creative team?

Ex.9.

Which Which What Which What What What What Which What Which Which What What Which

Ex.10.

- 2 How is cheese made?
- 3 When was the computer invented?
- 4 Why isn't Sue working today?
- 5 What time are your friends coming?
- 6 Why was the concert cancelled?
- 7 Where was your mother born?
- 8 Why didn't you come to the party?
- 9 How did the accident happen?
- 10 Why doesn't this machine work?

9. Continuous Tenses (Present Continuous, Past Continuous, Future Continuous).

Ex. 1

- 1. I'm playing tennis with my friend now.
- 2. We are walking on the beach now.
- 3. They are having a great time at the camp at the moment.
- 4. Angela is painting a beautiful picture now.
- 5. Tina and Pam are staying in a five-star hotel.
- 6. It is raining outdoors at the moment.
- 7. Bobby is preparing for the test in his room.
- 8. The dog is barking at some strangers.
- 9. The water in the kettle is boiling.
- 10. Somebody is knocking at the door.
- 11. The children are still sleeping.
- 12. You are

watching the sunset now. 13. The girls are choosing the costumes for the party. 14. We are waiting for the bus at the bus-stop. 15. A little girl is crying.

Ex. 2

1. Pupils aren't writing a dictation now. They are translating the text. 2. Margaret is washing the dishes. She isn't sweeping the floor. 3. The days are getting shorter. They aren't getting longer. 4. My Granny isn't reading a magazine. She is watching TV. 5. My friend and me are sunbathing. We aren't swimming. 6. The kitten isn't sleeping. It is playing. 7. Greg and his boss aren't having lunch. They are reading a report. 8. Cliff and Julia are preparing for the test. They aren't dancing at the disco. 9. My father isn't washing his car. He is digging in the garden. 10. I'm not learning a poem now. I'm writing an essay. 11. You are skating now. You aren't playing snowballs now. 12. I'm drinking tea now. I'm not drinking coffee now. 13. My father and me aren't listening to music now. We aren't listening to news now.

Ex. 3

a. knows, are disappearing; b. cover, contain; c. remove, produce;
d. are they vanishing; e. agree; f. is changing; g. are cutting down, causing;
h. is happening; i. are burning, using; j. understand, are beginning.

Ex. 4

1. Around me people were talking German, Italian and English.
2. Robert was talking to some of the other guests on the terrace when Hardy came.
3. Michael was looking at his watch.
4. All night long the stars were glittering.
5. Lizzie was eating and didn't raise her head.
6. He drank some of the wine and ate several chunks of bread while he was waiting for his dinner to come up.
7. The family was preparing for the party.
8. She was arguing that only Belinda knew how to treat men.
9. A few minutes later Dixon was hurrying through the streets to his bus stop.
10. They moved across the room, which was starting to fill up, to a vacant corner.

Ex. 5

1. were writing
2. was working
3. were watching
4. Were you playing football ...?
5. Were you drinking tea ... ?
6. Was he drawing ...?
7. Who was listening ...?
8. Was it raining ...?
9. Were they skating ...?

10. She was not (=wasn't) helping ...

Ex. 6

- a. was taking, discovered; b. was working, dropped, invented;
c. arrived, was trying; d. discovered, was looking ;
e. was climbing, discovered; f .was sitting , fell, understood;
g. was trying, made, stuck; h. was observing, realized.

Ex .7

1. will be driving
2. will be flying
3. Will you be using the Internet in half an hour?
4. won't be sunbathing
5. Will Mark be staying at the hotel until next Monday?
6. will be celebrating
7. won't be sleeping
8. will be waiting
9. will be making – will be taking
10. Will Andy be singing a new song at the party tonight?

Ex. 8

On Monday, at 10 a.m. Michael will be driving his wife to the airport.

On Tuesday morning he won't be sleeping till late.

On Wednesday, at 2 p.m. he will be taking the dog to the vet.

On Thursday, at 6 p.m. he will be playing rugby with his brothers.

On Friday, at 8 p.m. he will be watching the football championship and he won't be drinking any beer.

On Saturday afternoon he will be tidying the house.

On Sunday evening he will be meeting his wife at the train station.

Ex. 9.

1. didn't see ... was looking
2. met ... were going ... was going ... had ... were waiting/waited
3. was cycling ... stepped ... was going ... managed ... didn't hit

Ex. 10.

2. were you doing
3. Did you go
4. was wearing (wore is also possible)
5. were you driving ... happened
6. took ... wasn't looking
7. didn't know
8. saw ... was trying
9. was walking ... heard ... was following ... started
- 10 . wanted

10. Perfect Tenses (Present Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect)

Ex. 1.

We have just met an American actor. Has your husband sold the house? I haven't started my new job yet. Have you been to New York before? Ann hasn't chosen the dessert yet. They have done the shopping today. Has Tom ever visited Disneyland? I have just seen a horror film. She hasn't found her coat. The cat has already eaten up the fish.

Ex. 2.

1. Have been. 2. Haven't seen, have they come. 3. Have lost. 4. Have not seen. 5. Has gone. 6. Have already been. 7. Has not it arrived. 8. Has started, have not talked.

Ex. 3.

1. Have you heard, has gone, has not come back 2. Have met. 3. Have swum, have never done. 4. Have you ever tried. 5. Have not seen. 6. Have you ever spoken. 7. Have ever seen. 8. Gave up, have not smoked.

Ex. 4.

1. Has received. 2. Has got. 3. Has sold. 4. Has already bought. 5. Has already planned. 6. Has been. 7. Have got.

Ex. 5.

a. has always come; b. has fallen; c. have caused; d. have not / haven't done; e. have grown; f. have not / haven't reproduced; g. has reached; h. have reduced; i. have lost; j. has become, have stopped.

Ex. 6.

1. He had never been to Oxford before.
2. When I found my camera the butterfly had already flown away.
3. had suffered
4. hadn't appeared
5. had bought
6. had started

Ex. 7.

1. When the police arrived, we had already caught the thief. (Когда прибыла полиция, мы уже поймали вора.)
2. had finished – rang (Джэк закончил тест до того, как прозвенел звонок.)
3. When Anna came to say good-night, her children had already fallen asleep. (Когда Анна пришла, чтобы пожелать спокойной ночи, ее дети уже спали.)
4. Scott had already prepared the dinner when her husband got home from work. (Миссис Смит уже приготовила ужин, когда ее муж пришел домой с работы.)

5. got married – had known (Когда Брэд и Сюзан поженились, они знали друг друга три года.)
6. didn't enjoy – had read (Ей не понравился фильм, потому что она прочитала до этого книгу.)
7. was – had had (Наша квартира была в беспорядке, потому что у меня накануне ночью был день рождения.)
8. didn't go – had spent (Мы не пошли в ресторан, так как потратили все деньги на одежду.)
9. couldn't skate – had broken (Мэри не могла кататься на коньках после того, как сломала ногу.)
10. was late – had got stuck (Ларри опоздал, так как застрял в дорожной пробке.)

Ex 8

- a. finally reached; b. had actually arrived; c. found; d. had got; e. had used; f. restored.

Ex 9

1. will have done
2. Will you have eaten something by the time the bus arrives?
3. will have made
4. won't have landed
5. will have already started
6. won't have received
7. Will they have written down all the exercises by the end of the lesson?
8. will have been married
9. won't have finished
10. Will the workers have built the swimming-pool by next autumn?

Ex 10

1. By the time I'm 25 years old I will have opened a Ballet School. (К тому времени, когда мне исполнится 25 лет, я открою балетную школу.)
2. By the next year I'll have started learning French. (К следующему году я начну изучать французский язык.)
3. By 2050 I will have travelled the world. (К 2050 году я совершу путешествие по всему миру.)
4. By the time I get married I will have graduated from the university. (К тому времени, когда я выйду замуж, я окончу университет.)
5. By the end of this year I will have learnt figure-skating. (К концу года я научусь кататься на коньках.)
6. By December I will have visited my aunt in Australia. (К декабрю я навещу свою тетю в Австралии.)
7. By the time I'm 40 years old I will have had three children. (К тому времени, когда мне исполнится 40 лет, у меня будет трое детей.)

8. By next summer I will have finished my book of poems. (К следующему лету я закончу свой сборник стихотворений.)

11. Perfect Continuous Tenses (Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Perfect Continuous)

Ex.1.

I have been reading this book for three days. 2. We have been playing volleyball for twenty minutes. 3. She has been cleaning the flat for more than an hour. 4. Peter has been swimming for half an hour. 5. Anna has been speaking on the phone for an hour now. 6. You have been waiting for a bus for ten minutes only. 7. Nelly and Mary have been doing the shopping since early morning. 8. It has been snowing since last night. 9. Jack and his friend have been riding bikes for three hours now. 10. The teacher has been explaining a grammar rule since the beginning of the lesson.

Ex.2.

1. has been washing; 2. have been writing; 3. has been driving; 4. have been looking; 5. has been painting; 6. have been doing; 7. have been working; 8. has been blowing; 9. has been collecting; 10. have been discussing.

Ex. 3.

1. Has Jenny been waiting for her flight in the airport since twelve o'clock? — No, she hasn't. She has been waiting for her flight for forty minutes now. 2. Can I talk with you? — Sorry, I'm busy. I have been looking for one important paper for more than twenty minutes now and can't find it. 3. Is Ed at home? — No, he is in the gym. He has been training since five o'clock. 4. Has your mother been working as a manager for ten years? — No, she hasn't. She has been working as a manager for eighteen years. 5. Is Philip fixing the washing-machine? — Yes, he has been fixing it since nine o'clock. 6. Alison and Cindy haven't been painting the walls in the room for two hours. They have been working since morning. 7. The Petersons have been building their house for three years now. 8. Is mother in the kitchen? — Yes, she has been cooking since four o'clock. 9. You look tired! — Well, I have been gathering strawberries for more than two hours. 10. Where is Ben? — He is in his room. He has been listening to music since afternoon.

Ex. 4.

1. Helen had been playing for an hour and a half before Tom came to the court. 2. Mr Black had been working as a lawyer for twenty-five years before he retired. 3. We had been waiting for forty minutes when the bus arrived. 4. Sheila looked tired because she had been sewing a dress for her little daughter all day. 5. Before Jack got to level four he had been playing the same game for three hours. 6. Mike's neighbours were angry because he had been listening to loud music for four hours yesterday evening. 7. Everybody was very hungry because they had been working all day without a break for lunch. 8. We had been driving for five hours when

suddenly the car broke down. 9. They had been flying for six hours before the plane landed in the airport late in the evening yesterday. 10. Alex and Den had been preparing for the exam since Easter.

Ex.5.

1. My sister had been practising for two months before that concert. 2. The boys had been fishing for three hours before Tom caught the first fish. 3. We had been discussing that problem for more than an hour before we found the right solution. 4. Henry had been waiting for half an hour before he saw his girlfriend getting off the tram. 5. Driving to the hospital was difficult as it had been snowing all night. 6. Polly had been studying economy since she entered university. 7. Ron's collection of coins was valuable as he had been collecting them since he was a schoolboy. 8. When Sam returned home we had been watching that TV programme for quarter of an hour already. 9. Bill's coat and mittens were wet because he had been playing snowballs with his friends in the yard. 10. David was irritated because the police inspector had been asking him questions for more than an hour.

Ex. 6.

1. It had been snowing for five hours before the weather changed. 2. Betty and Jane had been arguing for half an hour when their parents returned home. 3. Why did Ed miss his training yesterday? — He couldn't come because he had been preparing his project all day yesterday. 4. Had Isabel been working as a secretary for four years before she moved to another town? — No, she hadn't. She had been working as a secretary just for two years. 5. Had Pete been playing computer games all the evening last Friday? — No, he hadn't. He had been writing an essay for two hours and then he went for a walk. 6. Jean hadn't been waiting for our boss all the morning yesterday. She had been speaking to some clients for about an hour and then she went to the bank. 7. Kevin was exhausted because he had been unloading the lorry for three hours. 8. I was really happy that Ron won that competition because he had been preparing for it for half a year. 9. Had you been saving money for a new computer for a long time? — Yes, I had. I hadn't been spending a penny for six months before I got a sufficient sum. 10. Cathy and Sue had been tidying our cottage house for two days after that birthday party.

Ex. 7.

1. By the beginning of April my father will have been working as the General Manager of this corporation for fifteen years. 2. By 8 o'clock we will have been surfing the Net for five hours. 3. By the end of next month we will have been living in this city for ten years. 4. By the end of this day Dolly won't have been designing this fancy dress for seven hours. 5. Will Ted have been working as an attorney for twenty years by the end of March? 6. Will Jack and Alison have been building their house for a year by Easter? 7. My parents will have been running this cafe for six years by next September. 8. By 4 o'clock they will have been playing volleyball for three hours. 9. By 3 o'clock the students will have been writing the

test for two hours and a half. 10. By next Friday Henry will have been training for the competition for ten months.

Ex. 8.

1. By the 25th of December she will have been working on this project for six months. 2. By Saturday, Fred will have been painting this picture for two weeks. 3. We will have been studying marketing for a year by the end of the academic year. 4. By tomorrow morning Laura will have been sleeping for twelve hours. 5. Will they have been working together for ten years by the end of May? — Yes, they will. 6. Will Nick have been training for four hours by 6 o'clock? — No, he won't. 7. By 5 o'clock Jessica will have been sitting at the dentist's for three hours. 8. By 12 o'clock the children will have been swimming for two hours. 9. By the end of the day the workers will have been painting this house for nine hours. 10. By 6 o'clock in the evening we will have been waiting for his message for five hours.

Ex. 9.

1. will have been playing; 2. we will be watching; 3. Will you be shopping; 4. will have been attending; 5. will be seeing; 6. will be cruising; 7. will have delivered; 8. will have been teaching; 9. Will you be using; 10. will have received.

Ex .10.

- 2 have been looking/'ve been looking
- 3 are you looking
- 4 have been going/'ve been going
- 5 have been thinking/'ve been thinking
- 6 is working/'s working
- 7 has been working/'s been working

12. Modal verbs

Ex 1

1. Might we leave him alone? 2. Must I do it now? 3. Ought I to Oix my car? 4. You should not give him the knife. 5. Can you sing? 6. She must not go home alone. 7. Should I do it? 8. I could not swim. 9. We don't have to buy a new house. 10. You may not leave him alone.

Ex 2

3. It must have been very expensive.
4. They must have gone away.
5. I must have left it in the restaurant last night.
6. It can't have been easy for her.
7. He must have been waiting for somebody.
8. She can't have understood what I said. or She couldn't have understood what I said.

9. I must have forgotten to lock it.
10. My neighbours must have been having a party.
11. The driver can't have seen the red light. or The driver couldn't have seen ...

Ex 3

3. We should have reserved a table.
4. The shop should be open (now). / The shop should have opened by now. or It should ...
5. She shouldn't be doing 50. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.
6. I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down. or I should have written it down.
7. The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning. / ... shouldn't have stopped so suddenly.
8. I should have been looking where I was going. / I shouldn't have been looking behind me.

Ex 4

3. don't have to
4. mustn't
5. don't have to
6. mustn't
7. doesn't have to
8. mustn't
9. mustn't
10. don't have to

Ex 5

2. must 6. can't
3. can't 7. must
4. must 8. must
5. must 9. can't

Ex.6.

3. We had to close
4. She has to leave *or* She'll have to leave / She will have to leave
5. do you have to be
6. I have to go *or* I'll have to go / I will have to go
7. Does he have to travel
8. do you have to go *or* will you have to go
9. did you have to wait
10. had to do

Ex .7.

2. Can/Could I leave a message? or Can/Could you give her a message?
3. Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? or .. the way to the station? or ... where the station is?
4. Can/Could I try on these trousers? or Can/Could I try these (trousers) on?
5. Can I give you a lift?

Ex.8.

2. Do you think I could use your phone?
3. Do you think you could check this letter (for me)?
4. Do you think I could leave work early?
5. Do you think you could turn the music down? or ... turn it down?
6. Do you think I could come and see the flat?

Ex .9.

- 1 Would you like something to eat? or Can I offer you something to eat?
- 2 Can/Could/Would you show me? or Do you think you could show me? or ... do it for me?
- 3 Can/Could/May I have a look at your newspaper? or Do you think I could ...?
- 4 Would you like to sit down? or Can I offer you a seat?
- 5 Can/Could/Would you slow down? or Do you think you could ...?
- 6 Can/Could/May I/we have the bill, please? or Do you think I/we could have ...? or Can/Could you bring me/us the bill, please?
- 7 Would you like to borrow it? or ... to read it?

Ex .10.

- 3 had better/'d better or should
- 4 should
- 5 should
- 6 had better/'d better
- 7 should
- 8 should

13. Gerund

Ex 1

1. Do you enjoy going to the cinema? — Тебе нравится ходить в кино?
2. His wife doesn't mind washing up. — Его жена не возражает против того, чтобы помыть посуду.
3. I can't stand working on weekends. — Я не выношу работать по выходным.
4. Everyone can improve his pronunciation by reading aloud every day. — Каждый может улучшить своё произношение, громко читая каждый день.
5. Is your brother going to give up smoking? — Твой брат собирается бросить курить?
6. Mary suggested buying an ice-cream. — Мэри предложила купить мороженое.

7. Don't put off writing a composition till the end of the week. — Не откладывай написание сочинения до конца недели.
8. The pupils expressed great surprise at hearing it. — Ученики выразили большое удивление, слыша это.
9. We don't remember lending her any money. — Мы не помним, чтобы одалживали её какие-либо деньги.
10. Please, stop giggling, there's nothing to laugh at. — Пожалуйста, перестаньте хихикать, здесь не над чем смеяться.
11. The doctor told Jack to avoid sitting in the sun. — Врач сказал Джеку, чтобы тот избегал сидения на солнце.
12. My friend prefers living in the south. — Мой друг предпочитает жить на юге.
13. Their father goes hunting every month. — Их отец каждый месяц ходит на охоту.
14. He tried taking an aspirin but it didn't help. — Он пробовал выпить аспирин, но это не помогло.
15. I have no hope of seeing you soon. — Я не надеюсь тебя скоро увидеть.
16. When we finish eating our lunch, we'll go shopping. — Когда мы закончим обедать, мы пойдём по магазинам.
17. The little child began crying. — Маленький ребёнок начал плакать.
18. This book is worth reading. — Эта книга стоит того, чтобы её прочитать.
19. Do you mind my opening the door? — Ты не возражаешь, если я закрою дверь?
20. I insisted on their coming with us. — Я настоял, чтобы они пошли с нами.

Ex 2.

1. to visit
2. eating
3. buying
4. going
5. writing
6. to answer
7. to get
8. to hurt
9. beating
10. to travel
11. to leave
12. to fly
13. to get
14. smoking
15. to have
16. washing up
17. giggling
18. playing

19. dancing
20. working

Ex 3.

1. speak
2. feel
3. to be
4. stay
5. call
6. to send
7. move
8. enter
9. to paint
10. to sell
11. to keep
12. to lift
13. give
14. cost
15. cross

Ex 4.

- 1 – i (Ее интересует проведение времени в интернете.)
- 2 – h (Я бы хотел выпить чашку кофе.)
- 3 – a (Тебе нужно бросить употреблять алкоголь.)
- 4 – g (Нам очень нравится плавать в море.)
- 5 – b (С нетерпением жду встречи с дочкой.)
- 6 – e (Он привык жить в грязном доме.)
- 7 – c (Она притворилась больной.)
- 8 – j (У Памелы есть способности к езде верхом на лошади.)
- 9 – d (Я не мог не смеяться над ней.)
- 10 – f (Она избегает разговоров с пьяными.)

Ex 5. Образуйте формы инфинитива (подставьте “to”) или герундия (прибавьте “-ing”) глаголов в скобках, чтобы следующие предложения стали грамматически правильными.

1. watching | 2. to go | 3. going | 4. waiting | 5. to go | 6. barking | 7. to call | 8. having | 9. missing | 10. to find

Ex 6. Дополните следующие предложения формами инфинитива (подставьте “to”) или герундия (прибавьте “-ing”) глаголов, данных ниже, чтобы они стали грамматически правильными.

answer apply be be listen make see try use wash work write

1. answering | 2. making | 3. listening | 4. applying | 5. washing | 6. being | 7. working | 8. using | 9. seeing | 10. writing | 11. being | 12. trying |

Ex 7. Образуйте формы инфинитива (с частицей “to” или без нее) или герундия (прибавьте “-ing”) глаголов в скобках, чтобы следующие предложения стали грамматически правильными.

1. smoking | 2. to go | 3. to do | 4. read | 5. to go | 6. to go | 7. eating | 8. cry | 9. to study |

Ex. 8.

To visit Eating Buying Going Writing To answer To get To hurt Beating To travel
To leave To fly To get Smoking To have Washing up Giggling Playing Dancing
Working

Ex.9.

Speak Feel To be Stay Call To send Move Enter To paint To sell To keep To lift
Give Cost Cross

Ex.10.

- 1 – i (Ее интересует проведение времени в интернете.)
- 2 – h (Я бы хотел выпить чашку кофе.)
- 3 – a (Тебе нужно бросить употреблять алкоголь.)
- 4 – g (Нам очень нравится плавать в море.)
- 5 – b (С нетерпением жду встречи с дочкой.)
- 6 – e (Он привык жить в грязном доме.)
- 7 – c (Она притворилась больной.)
- 8 – j (У Памелы есть способности к езде верхом на лошади.)
- 9 – d (Я не мог не смеяться над ней.)
- 10 – f (Она избегает разговоров с пьяными.)

14. Phrasal verbs

Ex 1

2. sit down; 3.flew away; 4.get out; 5. speak up; 6.get by; 7. gone up;
8.looked round;

Ex 2

2. back at; 3. up to; 4. forward to; 5. away with; 6. up at;
7. in through.

Ex 3

2. a mistake; 3. a candle; 4. an order; 5. a cigarette I a candle;
6. a new product; 7. a mess.

Ex .4

2. turn up
3. moving in

4. closed down
5. dropped out
6. show off
7. dozed off
8. clears up

Ex .5

2. back at
3. out of
4. on with
5. up at
6. forward to
7. away with

Ex .6

2. cross it out
3. made it up
4. give them back
5. see her off
6. gave them away
7. show you round
8. turned it down

Ex .7

3. them up
4. the television off or off the television
5. him down
6. a jacket on or on a jacket
- 7 your cigarette out or out your cigarette
- 8 it out
- 9 a word up or up a word
- 10 it up

Ex.8.

2. be away I have gone away
3. be back
4. ran away
5. smile back
6. get away
7. Keep away I Keep back

Ex.9.

2. Pay
3. throw

4. gets
5. be
6. look
7. gave
8. get

Ex.10.

2. throw it away
3. take them back
4. pay you back I pay it back
5. gave them away
6. call back I call me back

15. Conditional sentences Type I, II, III

Ex .1.

1. will be
2. had stopped
3. don't run
4. would have torn
5. won't win (will not win)
6. would move
7. behaved
8. wouldn't break
9. would have driven
10. had put on

Ex .2.

1. If I could cook I would make a strawberry cake. (Если бы я мог готовить, я бы сделал клубничный торт.)
2. If I were a fireman I would save people. (Если бы я был пожарным, я бы спасал людей.)
3. If I were tall I would play basketball. (Если бы я был высоким, я бы играл в баскетбол.)
4. If I knew French well I would move to Canada. (Если бы я знал французский хорошо, я бы переехал в Канаду.)
5. If I had a bunch of flowers I would give it to Alice. (Если бы у меня был букет цветов, я бы подарил его Алисе.)

Ex .3.

0 тип

1. comes – go
2. run – become

I тип

1. costs – will not take (won't take)
2. will be – lose
3. don't eat up – will feed

II тип

1. had – would watch
2. were – wouldn't eat
3. would be – didn't have

III тип

1. hadn't smoked – wouldn't have been
2. had met – would have called

Ex .4.

1. If I were you, I would go to the doctor. — На твоём месте я бы пошёл к врачу. 2. If our son's wife cooked at home, he would not eat fast food. — Если бы жена нашего сына готовила дома, он бы не питался фаст-фудом. 3. If people did not sell guns, the life would become safer. — Если бы люди не продавали оружие, то жизнь была бы безопаснее. 4. If Ted moved to Manchester, he would live near his brother. — Если бы Тед переехал в Манчестер, то жил бы рядом со своим братом. 5. If you went to the gym, you would feel better. — Если бы ты пошёл в физкультурный зал, то почувствовал бы себя лучше. 6. If she asked us, we would help her. — Если бы она нас попросила, мы бы ей помогли. 7. If it rained, our children would get wet. — Если бы пошёл дождь, наши дети бы промокли. 8. If your friend had a driving license, he would get this job. — Если бы у твоего друга были водительские права, он бы получил эту работу. 9. If Steve studied more, he would pass the exams. — Если бы Стив больше занимался, он бы сдал экзамены. 10. If they were at home, we would call them. — Если бы они были дома, мы бы ей позвонили.

Ex .5.

1. If I hadn't left my umbrella on the train, I wouldn't have got wet. — Если бы я не забыл свой зонт в поезде, я бы не промок. 2. If our sportsmen had won the competition, they would have taken the prize. — Если бы наши спортсмены выиграли соревнование, они бы взяли приз. 3. If you had spoken with your father, he could have given us some money. — Если бы ты поговорил со своим отцом, он бы мог дать нам немного денег. 4. If he had found a wallet, his life would have changed. — Если бы он нашёл кошелек, его жизнь бы изменилась. 5. If I had seen the criminal, I might have told the police about this. — Если бы я увидел преступника, я мог бы рассказать об этом полиции. 6. If she had invited him, he would have come. — Если бы она его пригласила, он бы пришёл. 7. If they had studied harder, they would have passed the last exams. — Если бы они учились усерднее, они бы сдали последние экзамены.

8. If you had studied English, you would have found a better job. — Если бы ты изучал английский язык, ты бы нашёл лучшую работу.
9. If I had read English two years ago, I would have understood those books. — Если бы я читал по-английски два года назад, я бы понял те книги.
10. If your wife had been more careful, she wouldn't have broken your new car. — Если бы твоя жена была более осторожна, она бы не разбила твою новую машину

Ex .6.

- 1 – f (Ты бы справился с экзаменом намного лучше, если бы брал частные уроки.)
- 2 – e (Если бы погода была хорошей, мы бы могли покататься на лошадях.)
- 3 – c (Я бы не купил эту книгу, если бы знал, какая она скучная.)
- 4 – a (Она бы поехала в Японию прошлым летом, если бы хорошо говорила по-японски.)
- 5 – d (Если бы я не взял зонт, я бы промок.)
- 6 – b (То здание не развалилось бы, если бы не было таким старым.)

Ex .7.

1. had saved – would have gone (Если бы я накопил больше денег, я бы отправился в Австралию)
2. hadn't argued – would have spent (Если бы наши родители не поругались, мы бы провели выходные вместе.)
3. wouldn't have allowed – hadn't put on (Его не впустили бы в офис, если бы он не надел галстук.)
4. hadn't broken out – wouldn't have sunk (Если бы не разразился шторм, корабль не утонул бы.)
5. would have taken – had had (Я бы отвез тебя в аэропорт, если бы имел машину.)
6. wouldn't have visited – hadn't drunk (Ты бы не пошел к врачу, если бы не выпил холодного молока.)
7. wouldn't have lost – had been (Она не потеряла бы свою сумку, если бы была более внимательной.)
8. hadn't taken – wouldn't have arrived (Если бы водитель не повернул не в том месте, мы бы не опоздали.)

Ex .8.

1. were – would invite (Если бы он был моим другом, я бы пригласил его на вечеринку.)
2. were – would become (Если бы я был выше, я бы стал баскетболистом.)
3. hit – would cause (Если бы астероид столкнулся с нашей планетой, это бы привело к ледниковому периоду.)
4. would travel – won (Джон путешествовал бы по всему миру, если бы выиграл лотерейный приз.)

- 5.would go – had (Мы бы поехали этой зимой в Испанию, если бы у нас было достаточно денег.)
- 6.wouldn't mind – borrowed (Она бы не возражала, если бы ты попросил у нее машину.)
- 7.moved – would phone (Если бы ты переехал в другой город, я бы звонил тебе каждый день.)
- 8.would laugh – sang (Они бы посмеялись надо мной, если бы я спел эту песню.)
- 9.had – would start (Если бы у нас было свободное время, мы бы занялись новым хобби.)
- 10.knew – wouldn't tell (Если бы я знал ее секрет, я бы никому не рассказал о нем.)

Ex .9.

1. If he were slim, he would be more attractive. (Если бы он был стройным, он был бы более привлекательным.)
2. I would pick the children up if I were not busy. (Я бы забрал детей, если бы не был занят.)
3. If you drank much wine, you would feel sleepy. (Если бы ты выпил много вина, ты бы захотел спать.)
4. If I were married, I would have lunch at home. (Если бы я был женат, я бы обедал дома.)
5. If Peter lived in a house, he would have a dog. (Если бы Петя жил в доме, у него была бы собака.)

Ex .10.

1. If you left the child alone, he would hurt himself. (Если бы ты оставил ребенка одного, он бы поранился.)
2. We would make nice pictures if Paola brought a camera. (Мы бы сделали красивые фотографии, если бы Паола принесла фотоаппарат.)
3. If it snowed, the kids would make a snowman. (Если бы пошел снег, дети бы слепили снеговика.)
4. I'd buy this laptop if I had enough money. (Я бы купил этот ноутбук, если бы имел достаточно денег.)
5. If our granny put on her glasses, she would see the flowers. (Если бы наша бабушка надела очки, она бы увидела цветы.)
6. If you were too busy, we'd leave you alone. (Если бы ты был слишком занят, мы бы оставили тебя в покое.)
7. I would plant the tomatoes tomorrow if it rained. (Я бы посадила завтра помидоры, если бы пошел дождь.)
8. If Bob found his relatives, he would live with them. (Если бы Боб нашел своих родственников, он бы жил с ними.)

16. Passive voice

Ex 1

a. were lit; b. was invented; c. were shown; d. were used; e. was designed; f. was made; g. were sold; h. were replaced; i. was written; j. were introduced.

Ex .2.

1. They will meet the scientists at the airport. — The scientists will be met at the airport. — Они встретят учёных в аэропорту. — Учёных встретят в аэропорту.
2. Mary baked the big cake. — The big cake was baked by Mary. — Мэри испекла большой пирог. — Большой пирог был испечён Мэри.
3. They did not send the messenger there. — The messenger was not sent there. — Они туда не посылали курьера. — Курьер туда не был послан.
4. The fox caught the hare. — The hare was caught by the fox. — Лиса поймала зайца. — Заяц был пойман лисой.
5. They will build a new stadium in this town in two years. — A new stadium will be built in this town in two years. — Через два года они построят в этом городе новый стадион. — Через два года в этом городе будет построен новый стадион.
6. A gardener water these plants once a week. — These plants are watered once a week by a gardener. — Садовник поливает эти растения один раз в неделю. — Эти растения поливаются садовником один раз в неделю.
7. The neighbour's child stole our cat. — Our cat was stolen by the neighbour's child. — Соседский ребёнок украл нашу кошку. — Наша кошка была украдена соседским ребёнком.
8. They will demolish that old theatre next year. — That old theatre will be demolished next year. — Они снесут тот старый театр в следующем году. — Этот старый театр будет снесён в следующем году.
9. Your drunken friend spoiled the party. — The party was spoilt by your drunken friend. — Твой пьяный друг испортил вечеринку. — Вечеринка была испорчена твоим пьяным другом. .
10. They often spell this word incorrectly. — This word is often spelt incorrectly. — Они часто пишут это слово неправильно. — Это слово часто пишется неправильно.

Ex 3

1. This room hasn't been used for ages.
2. The keys will be given you tomorrow.
3. Dr Johnson is being interviewed at the moment.
4. By the time I arrived, all your letters had been already opened.
5. The problems of the family are usually talked briefly at dinner time.

Ex .4.

3. covers
4. is covered

5. are locked
6. was sent ... arrived
7. sank ... was rescued
8. died ... were brought up
9. grew up
10. was stolen
11. disappeared
12. did Sue resign
13. was Ben fired
14. is owned
15. called ... was injured ...
wasn't needed
16. were these pictures taken ...
Did you take
17. 'm not bothered I am not bothered

Ex .5.

2. covers
3. is covered
4. are locked
5. was posted ... arrived
6. sank ... was rescued
7. died ... were brought
8. grew
- 9 was stolen
- 10 disappeared
- 11 did Sue resign
- 12 was Bill sacked
- 13 is owned
- 14 called ... was injured ... wasn't needed
- 15 were these photographs taken ... Did you take

Ex .6.

2. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3. This road isn't used very often.
4. I was accused of stealing money.
5. How are languages learnt?
6. We were advised not to go out alone.

Ex .7.

3. he made
4. be woken up
5. be spent
6. have been repaired

7. be carried
8. have been caused

Ex .8.

2. The concert has been postponed.
3. The computer is being used at the moment.
4. I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.
5. ... we found that the game had been cancelled.
6. A new ring road is being built round the city.
7. A new hospital has been built near the airport.

Ex .9.

- 3 It has been stolen!/It's been stolen?
- 4 Somebody has taken it. or ... taken my umbrella.
- 5 He has been promoted./He's been promoted. or He was promoted.
- 6 It is being redecorated./It's being redecorated.
- 7 It is working again./It's working again . It has been repaired. It's been repaired.
- 8 Two people were arrested last night.
- 9 It had been blown down in the storm. or It was blown down.
- 10 Nobody has seen him since then.
- 11 Have you ever been mugged?

Ex .10.

2. I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.
3. Janet was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.
4. I wasn't told that George was ill.
5. How much will you be paid?
6. I think Tom should have been offered the job.
7. Have you been shown what to do?

17. Sequence of Tenses

Ex 1

1. A brother and a sister are buying food in the supermarket. — They said that a brother and a sister were buying food in the supermarket. — Говорили, что брат и сестра покупают еду в супермаркете. 2. This boy studies English. — They said that that boy studied English.— Говорили, что этот мальчик изучает английский язык. 3. A popular singer will sing his best songs the day after tomorrow. — They said that a popular singer would sing his best songs two days later. — Говорили, что популярный певец послезавтра споёт свои лучшие песни. 4. Three men are talking about dogs yesterday. — They said that three men were talking about dogs the day before. — Говорили, что трое мужчин

беседуют о собаках. 5. A famous writer writes new books. — They said that a famous writer wrote new books. — Говорили, что знаменитый писатель пишет новые книги. 6. My friends are here in the hall. — They said that my friends were there in the hall. — Говорили, что мои друзья здесь в зале. 7. Our teacher opened these books. — They said that our teacher had opened these books. — Говорили, что наш учитель открыл эти книги.

Ex 2.

1. + (is)
2. - (was)
3. - (had called)
4. + (lives)
5. - (couldn't afford)
6. - (had read)
7. + (goes to bed)
8. - (had left)
9. + (consists of)
10. + (are)

Ex 3.

1. had (Я знал, что у моей сестры была проблема.)
2. has (Я знаю, что у моей сестры есть проблема.)
3. would have (Я знал, что у моей сестры скоро возникнет проблема.)
4. had lived (Он сказал, что живет в Москве с 2005 года.)
5. has been cancelled (Она спрашивает меня, был ли отменен вылет.)
6. had been cancelled (Она спросила меня, был ли отменен вылет.)
7. would happen (Никто не знал, что произойдет дальше.)
8. hadn't met (Майк сказал, что не встречал Хелен с тех пор, как они расстались.)
9. didn't want (Келли сказала, что не хотела надевать шляпу.)
10. would show (Мы не ожидали, что он покажет нам фильм.)

Ex 4.

1. He realized he would be alone.
2. We hoped she would be waiting for us at six o'clock.
3. He proved he was the best.
4. She imagined she could do that.
5. We understood we needed more money.

Ex 5.

1. I thought that they were waiting for me at home.
2. John was sure that I had left the city.
3. I hoped he would come.
4. We didn't know he could speak English.

Ex . 6.

She said that she spoke French. She said that she was speaking French. She said that she had spoken French. She said that she had spoken French. She said that she was going to speak French. She said that she would speak French. She said that she could speak French. She said that she might speak French. She said that she had to speak French. She said that she had to speak French. She said that she should speak French. She said that she ought to speak French.

Ex . 7. 1. + (is); 2. – (was); 3. – (had called); 4. + (lives); 5. – (couldn't afford); 6. – (had read); + 7. (goes to bed); 8. – (had left); 9. + (consists of); 10. + (are).

Ex . 8.

1. Had (Я знал, что у моей сестры была проблема.) 2. Has (Я знаю, что у моей сестры есть проблема.) 3. Would have (Я знал, что у моей сестры скоро возникнет проблема.) 4. Had lived (Он сказал, что живет в Москве с 2005 года.) 5. Has been cancelled (Она спрашивает меня, был ли отменен вылет.) 6. Had been cancelled (Она спросила меня, был ли отменен вылет.) 7. Would happen (Никто не знал, что произойдет дальше.) 8. Hadn't met (Майк сказал, что не встречал Хелен с тех пор, как они расстались.) 9. Didn't want (Келли сказала, что не хотела надевать шляпу.) 10. Would show (Мы не ожидали, что он покажет нам фильм.)

Ex.9.

1. Мы видели, что он танцует с этой девушкой.
2. Я знал, что он работает в иностранной компании.
3. Мама сказала, что дядя Том приходил повидать нас несколько дней назад.
4. Он спросил меня, не выигрывал ли я в других играх в последнее время.
5. Он знал, что она без сомнения выйдет замуж за этого мужчину.
6. Она сказала, что собирается пройтись по магазинам.
7. Салли сказала, что не любит шоколад.
8. Он думал, что я играю в шахматы.
9. Я не знал, что он ушел в кино.
10. Мы знали, что они работали в саду с самого утра.

Ex.10.

1. Он знал, что металлы проводят электричество.
2. Оратор сказал, что люди хотят мира.
3. Она сказала, что мы должны торопиться.
4. Я знал, что ему надо поговорить с тобой.
5. Вчера было не так холодно, как сейчас.
6. Мой брат рассказал мне о книге, которую вы сейчас пишете.
7. Майк сказал, что он может помочь нам.
8. Я думал, что я должен делать все в одиночку.
9. Учитель сказал, что ты можешь войти.
10. Я не знал, что мне делать.